

SANĀTANA-DHARMA
AN ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK

220/

2201

SANĀTANA-DHARMA

AN ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK

OF

HINDU RELIGION AND ETHICS



PUBLISHED BY

THE THEOSOPHICAL PUBLISHING HOUSE

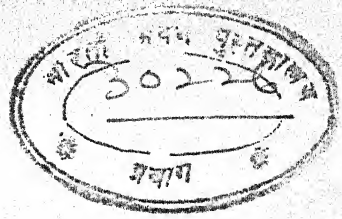
ADYAR, MADRAS

1939

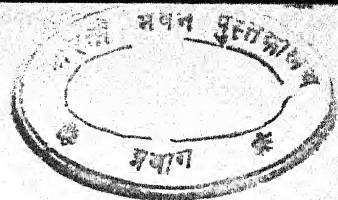
COPYRIGHT REGISTERED

All Rights Reserved

Printed by
C. SUBBARAYUDU,
AT THE VASANTA PRESS,
ADYAR, MADRAS.



सत्यमेव जयते नानृतम् ॥
उत्तिष्ठत जाग्रत प्राप्य वरान्निबोधत ॥



HISTORY

OF THE

SANĀTANA-DHARMA TEXT-BOOKS

*Compiled from material supplied
by Dr. Bhagavān Dās*

THE genesis of the Sanātana-dharma Text-Books is closely linked with the name of Dr. Annie Besant and her co-workers, Indian and European, who founded the Central Hindu College at Benares. Dr. Annie Besant arrived in India towards the close of 1893. In 1894-95, while she was staying at Benares, some citizens (members of The Theosophical Society) placed before her the idea of starting a non-official educational institution where the vital defect of the official educational system, *viz.*, the lack of provision for moral and religious trainings could be made good. The first thought was to start a Theosophical College where youths of all religions could be taught the basic principles and eternal

verities of that God-Wisdom or Theosophy of all times and religions which formed the common source and heart of the many particular religions founded at various times. It soon became evident, however, that active co-workers and helpers were available in the requisite numbers from the Hindu fold alone. Therefore, it was ultimately decided to begin with a Central Hindu institution at Benares, the object of which was to give, side by side with intellectual instruction and physical training, education in religion also, on such lines as would help to unify the hundreds of sects into which 'Hinduism' has been split up unhappily during the last ten or twelve centuries.

The C. H. College, including a School, was accordingly started in a rented house, in the heart of the town of Benares, on 7th July, 1898, with three classes. Dr. Arthur Richardson was the first Honorary Principal. The Memorandum of Association was registered, on 7th March, 1898. The seven signatories were Annie Besant, Upendra Nāth Basu, Bertram Keightley, Govinda Dās, Bhagavān Dās, Narendra Nāth Mitter, and Hirendra Nāth Datta.

The first two objects of the Association as stated in the Memorandum were as follows :

“(a) To establish educational institutions, including boarding-houses, which shall combine moral

and religious training, in accordance with the *Hindu S'āstras*, with secular education.

“(b) To promote the imparting of similar religious and moral training in other educational institutions.”

Soon after the institution started functioning, the need was felt, as was inevitable, for proper Text-Books, on the basis of which systematic instruction could be given in those principles of Hinduism (‘Sanātana-dharma’) which may be regarded as common to all its many sects.

An Outline of Religious Instruction, in accordance with the traditional and universally accepted subdivisions of the Vaidika-dharma, viz., Jñāna-kāṇḍa, Bhakti-kāṇḍa, and Karma-kāṇḍa, was drawn up by the President and the Secretary, and was circulated for six months, for amendment and criticism, among the members of the Board of Trustees, the Managing Committee, and a number of learned Hindus. The amendments suggested were carefully considered and duly incorporated by the Managing Committee. The Board reviewed the whole, amended, and finally passed the Scheme, on Dec. 30th., 1900. It is printed on pp. 52-55 of the second Annual Report of the C. H. C., for the year ending Sep. 30th., 1900. Its main points are reproduced, verbatim, in the Foreword and the Contents of *Sanātana-dharma, an Advanced Text-Book of Hindu Religion*

and Ethics ; and the text of the book is an amplification of the details.

A small sub-committee was appointed by the Board, to draw up the Text-Book on the lines of the Scheme. The Indian members of the sub-committee, as well as other learned scholars, supplied Samskr̥t texts, English translations, and other material. Dr. Annie Besant drafted the running text of the book in English. This was done in two months, middle of May to middle of July, 1901, at S'rī-nagar, Kashmir.

The third Annual Report of the C.H.C., for 1901, says (p.8) : " After careful consideration and extensive discussion, the Board decided, in December last, on a Scheme for a Text-Book of Hinduism, for the purposes of religious instruction. This Text-Book has since been drawn up, and proof-copies of it are now in circulation amongst the members of the Board of Trustees and the Managing Committee, and other learned Hindu friends possessing special knowledge on the subject. (A hundred proof-copies were thus circulated.) It is hoped that the Text-Book will be finally passed by the Board before very long ; and thereafter it is believed that not only this College, but many other institutions which wish, and whose circumstances allow them, to follow the example of this College, will find ready provided to their hands, an outline of the basic

principles of religion, which all Hindus, of whatever special sect, will be glad to see in the heads and the hearts of their children."

The fourth Annual Report, for 1902, (p. 6) says :
 "The religious instruction began to assume a little more definition in the year of report. The Text-Book has become a graduated series of three works, (1) *An Advanced Text-Book of Sanātana-dharma*, (2) *An Elementary Text-Book of Sanātana-dharma*, and (3) *Sanātana-dharma Catechism*."

"It was stated, at the last anniversary, that printed proofs of the first were then in circulation. The suggestions for additions, alterations, omissions, and improvements, that were received, were discussed, and decided on, at eight special meetings of the Board of Trustees, and the book, as thus finally shaped, is now in the press. This book is intended for College students. After the *Advanced Text-Book* was finally passed by the Board, an abstract of it was drawn up, as an *Elementary Text-Book*, for the use of the higher and middle school classes. The third still smaller abstract, in English, is in the shape of questions and answers for the use of small boys. This has been published and has been greatly appreciated; and translations of it, authorised by the Committee, have already appeared in Hindi, Urdu, Gujerāti, Marāṭhi, Tamil, Beṅgālī, Telugu, Malaiyālam, and Sindhi."

The fifth Annual Report, for 1903, (pp. 13-16) says: "In all the classes of the School and the College, the texts were taught with success. In addition, extra verses and passages were also taught to students and were studied by them with great interest. These extra studies were so regulated as to make the students familiar, in a general way, with the important authors of Samskr̥t literature. Verses specially suited for recitation were also dictated and explained to a select number of students. All the salient points of religion, given in the *Rāmāyaṇa*, the *Mahā-bhārata*, and the codes of Manu and others, were explained and illustrated. At the end of the morning lesson, some one student, or a band of them, chants some *stotra* previously learnt for the purpose; and, as different students do this, by turns, day after day, all of them get some practice in reciting Samskr̥t verse properly, half the significance of which is in the proper intonation of the metre. In consequence of these lessons in Hindu religion, all students, whatever their alternative courses of secular study may be, manage to get some knowledge of Samskr̥t, as quotations in that language are largely used in the religious Text-Books. The *Elementary Text-Book* was published in February, and the *Advanced* in July, 1903. Both have been well received by the public; and the *Elementary* has already been

introduced into many schools and colleges in British as well as Indian State territories. One more vernacular edition of the Catechism was issued this year, viz., 3,000 copies of a Canarese translation. Another, in Uriya, is now in hand. The general impression of the Committee is that *these books have supplied a long-felt and urgent want*, and they are inclined to agree with the opinion of some sympathisers, that they represent, in a sense, *almost the most important work* of the Central Hindu College Association so far."

The eighth Annual Report, for 1906, (p. 9) says : "A second edition of the *Advanced Text-Book*, making 10,000, has been issued ; and a third, of the *Elementary* making 15,000, is in the press : editions (of the latter) in Tamil, Bengālī, Urdu, and Kanarese have been issued. The *Catechism* runs to 104,000 (in the several languages and editions)." The tenth Annual Report, for 1907, (p. 13) says : "A *Stotra-mañjarī* was compiled, mainly of ancient Saṃskṛt Hymns to the Universal Paramātmā, by the religious lecturers, and published by the Board. A number of other books were written by Dr. Annie Besant, and published by the Board, to subserve the teaching of the Text-Books, e.g., *The Story of the Great War, (Mahā-bhārata)* ; *S'rī Rāma-candra, the Ideal King, (Rāmāyaṇa)* ; *Hindu Ideals* ; *Children of the Motherland* ; *Stories for Young*

Children ; etc., All these had good circulation, and some had to be reprinted repeatedly."

At the fourteenth anniversary, held on 7th and 8th Dec., 1912, H.H. Mahā-rājā Prabhu Nārāyaṇa Siṃha of Benares presided. In the course of his presidential speech, he said : " Benares has been the seat of learning from time immemorial, and even in these degenerate days she has stood as the champion of Saṃskṛt learning in India. In order to benefit the Hindus at large, and to leaven the purely material education of the present day with some of the high ideals of Hindu religion and ethics, this noble and venerable lady [meaning Dr. Besant] established this College in this holy city, so that it may bring forth students fully versed in worldly lore, but infused with those high ideals of religion and ethics without which man is little better than a beast. Education is barren without ethics, and ethics has no standing without religion. This College is, as I have said, the outcome of the disinterested exertions of this pious lady, Mrs. Besant, to whom the Hindu public ought to ever remain indebted for the boon she has conferred upon them by this means. This College ought therefore to be our first care, and its interests ought to be zealously guarded, more especially as it is going to be the nucleus of the Hindu University. The lines on which religious education has been carried on here have been

admirable. It has steered clear of all sectarian shoals and eddies, having the pure Sanātana-dharma as its goal." Such was the testimony given to the great value of the Religious instruction given in these Text-Books.

On that same occasion, Dr. Annie Besant spoke for the last time as President of the Central Hindu College; for the institution was transferred by the Board, to the charge of the Hindu University Society, on 27th Nov., 1914. She said, (p. 7 of the Report for 1912): "An idea was formed by three or four leading men of Benares that there should be built up in this sacred land of Kāśī an institution where religion must be taught. We had not then one inch of ground to stand upon. The general feeling was against religious education. It was said to be foolish and utopian. The students were overworked and it was considered to be cruel to overburden them with an additional subject. It was said that there were so many divisions in Hinduism that it would cause disputes among the children. No one had tried so far to establish an institution over which should spread the spirit of Hindu religion. When everything was discouraging, when none had a good word to say to us, we placed the thing before His Highness the Mahā-rājā of Benares, and asked him if he would help us with land on which to erect. He said he was ready and asked

us to begin. He told us to come to him as soon as we were ready and ask him what we wanted. A few months later, a second deputation went to him, and the College you see before you was the result. As long as there exists the name of the Central Hindu College and as long as the Hindu University shall last, so long shall His Highness' name be remembered as the first of India's Princes to uplift the Hindu people and to train the boys in the Motherland's religion. The College has since then grown year after year and religious education is no longer confined to the Central Hindu College. In far Kāshmīr, at S'rī-nagar, was founded a College for religious education, by the Central Hindu College of Benares, at the request of the Mahā-rājā of Kāshmīr. From north Kāshmīr to south Mysore, religious education has spread. Not only in Kashmir and Mysore, but in the dominions of H. H. the Nizam of Hyderabad, religious education is given to Hindu boys from the same Text-Books. In Rāj-putana, in the Rāj-kumār College, every Hindu prince is trained in the Sanātana-dharma Text-Books issued by the C. H. College. So vast a tree has grown from so small a seed. There is nothing so irrational as to say that a nation can live or men can grow without religious education. I appeal to history when I say that the great public schools and colleges of England were all founded by religious men."

Incidentally, it may be interesting to note the following contained in the same Report (p. 9) : "One of the pleasantest features of the prize-giving was that the prize to 'the most helpful student,' awarded on the vote of the students themselves, went to a Mussalmān student—a fairly good proof that education in Hinduism does not mean bigotry." It may be noted that though the large majority of students of the C. H. College were Hindus, naturally yet students of other faiths were never excluded, and were left at liberty to attend, or not, as they liked, the lectures on Sanātana-dharma.

Speaking again at the first anniversary meeting held for the first time under the auspices of the Hindu University Society, Dr. Besant stated as follows : "We put in the very forefront Religious Education. I must emphasise this basic idea of the education that we should impart. The Hindu University only widens the sphere and fields of activity of the C. H. College, without in any way affecting its ground-work. The object of the C. H. College has been, and the object of the Hindu University will be, to combine all that is best in the cultures of the East and of the West. And it goes without saying that the essence of the culture in the East is religion or the observance of our ancient Dharma."

Later, in that same year (1915), when the Benares Hindu University Act was being discussed in the

Central Legislature, a member, in refering to the clauses relating to religious instruction, jestingly asked the question, "What is Hinduism; what Hinduism are you going to teach?"; and the spokesman for the Act replied conclusively, "There is no room for question as to what Hinduism *we are going to teach; we have been teaching Hinduism through these Text-Books.*"

From the figures given in the Report for 1906, it will be seen that, by that time, *i.e.*, within less than four years of first publication, about 130,000 copies, altogether, of the three Text-Books, in the original English, the several translations, and reprints, had gone into circulation throughout the country.

It seems desirable to mention here that a work similar to that done for Sanātana-dharma through these Text-Books, was planned by Dr. Besant to be done for all the great living religions, through *The Universal Text-Book of Religion and Morals*, compiled by her on the same lines as these Text-Books, showing, by means of translated parallel passages, how the basic ideas were common to all religions. The earnest and thoughtful student may well read this book by Dr. Besant, and also another book, very recently published, *viz.*, *The Essential Unity of All Religions*, by her erudite collaborator Dr. Bhagavān Dās. In this latter book nearly

1,200 parallel passages are brought together from the sacred writings of the eleven great living religions ; over 1,000 of these are given in the original (in roman characters) as well as in translation ; and no copyright has been reserved, since there is none in the Scriptures. The arrangement of the topics is generally similar to that of these Text-Books ; but the method of elucidation and interweaving of the parallel texts is more detailed. These books will be found to supplement the Sanātana-dharma Text-Books, and help to bring home to the student, how the essentials of Sanātana-dharma permeate the other religions also and how by such understanding, peace and good-will may be established among followers of different creeds and faiths in this land of many creeds and faiths.

The above narrative proves how the great value of the religious education, given through these Text-Books of Sanātana-dharma, was recognised and deeply appreciated by all ranks, and by varied schools of thought, among the Hindus. Somehow, this line of work was not kept up after 1914-1915 ; the books went out of print ; and have not been available to the public for fifteen or twenty years now. The immediately urgent tasks concerned with the building up of the Benares Hindu University, absorbed all the attention and energies of its chief founder, the venerable Paṇḍit Madan Mohan

Mālavīya-jī. For a few years past, however, the idea of reprinting these Text-Books had been engaging his thoughts ; but was not implemented for various reasons. Meantime, there was a growing demand for their re-publication. With a view to meet this demand, the Theosophical Publishing House, Adyar opened correspondence with the authorities of the Benares Hindu University. Two years ago, the question was also discussed personally by the representatives of the T. P. H. It was understood that the University contemplated re-publication of the Text-books *only after effecting some revision* ; but, as this would take time, the T. P. H. decided to undertake their re-publication without further delay and make them readily available to the public who have been eagerly expecting their re-issue for some years past. The Texts are now reprinted exactly as they were printed and published in 1914-15 with the approval and *imprimatur* of the Trustees of the Central Hindu College, Benares, under the Presidency of Dr. Besant, except for the addition of a Chapter on *Puruṣārthas* from the pen of that eminent scholar Dr. Bhagavān Dās of Benares.

G. SRINIVASA MURTI,
Hon. Director, Adyar Library.

PATRONS OF THE CENTRAL HINDU COLLEGE

By 1914, the following had been enrolled as Patrons and Vice-Patrons of the Central Hindu College :

Patrons

Their Highnesses the Maharajas of Benares, Kashmir, Bhavnagar, Baroda, Travancore, Alwar, Mysore, Sailana, Gwalior, Bikaner, Poonch, and Morvi.

Vice-Patrons

The Honourable Maharaja Bahadur of Darbhanga; Darbar Sahab Bahadur of Wadia; S'rī Maharana of Limbdi; Darbar S'rī Vajsurvala of Hadala; Raja Dharmavant Bahadur of Hyderabad (Deccan) and Raja Sahab of Wanaparti (Hyderabad, Deccan).

**Board of Trustees of the
Central Hindu College**

President :

ANNIE BESANT

Vice-President :

UPENDRANĀTH BASU

Secretary :

BHAGAVĀN DĀS

Other Members

Honourable Justice Sir Subrahmanya Aiyar ;
Mahamahopadhyaya Pandit Adityaram Bhatta-
charya ;

S'rīs Chandra Bose, B.A. ;

N. Chakravarti ;

Mahamahopadhyaya Pt. Mahesh Chandra Nyaya-
ratna ;

Justice P. C. Chatterji ;

Pandit Parmeshri Das ;

Hirendranath Datta ;

Hon'ble Raja Suraj Kaul ;

Bertram Keightley ;

Rai Baroda K. Lahiri, (Ludhiana) ;

Pandit Cheda Lal ;

Rai Pyare Lal (Delhi) ;

Rai Pramada Das Mittra Bahadur ;

Kumar Narendranath Mitra (Calcutta) ;

Colonel H. S. Olcott ;

Rai Bahadur Kumar Parmanand ;

S'ri Harisinghji Rupsinghji ;

Pandit Jwala Prasada Sanhadhara ;

Kumar Bharat Singh ;

Indra Narayana Sinha ;

Pandit Sunderlal (Allahabad) ;

Govinda Das (Benares) ;
 Mahamahopadhyaya Pandit Gangadhar Shastri ;
 Mahamahopadhyaya Pandit Shivakumar Shastri ;
 Lala Ramanuja Dayal
 Mokshada Das Mittra ;
 Rash Behary Mukerjee ;
 Pandit Bishambhar Nath (Allahabad) :
 Purnendu Narayan Sinha ;
 Honourable Saligram Sinha ;
 Sirdar Umrao Singh
 Balkrishna Das (Benares)

In the course of the subsequent years upto 1914,
 the following names were gradually added to the
 Board of Trustees :

Honourable Raja Munshi Madho Lal ;
 Rai Bahadur Pt. Maharaj Narayana Shivapuri ;
 Seth Dharamsey Morarji Gokul Das ;
 Honourable Mr. Justice N. G. Chandavarkar ;
 Rai Bahadur Dr. Balkrishna Kaul ;
 Sri Vaje Shankar Udai Shankar Oza ;
 Pt. Jwala Prasad Shankhadhara ;
 Lala Ramanuj Dayal ;
 Honourable Justice Sarada Charan Mitter ;
 Mahamahopadhyaya Pt. Sudhakar Dvivedi ;
 Babu Devanath Singh ;
 Babu Langat Singh ;
 Rai Bahadur Diwan Shyam Sundar Lal ;
 Rai Bahadur Lala Baijnath (Allahabad) ;

Honourable Justice Dr. Ashutosh Mukhopadhyaya ;

Rai Bahadur Nihal Chand ;

Dr. Arthur Richardson ;

Rai Bahadur Diwan Daya Krishen Kaul ;

Babu Ganga Prasad Varma ;

Sri Jnanendra Nath Basu ;

Sri Kali Charan Mittra ;

Honourable Pandit Madan Mohan Malaviya ;

Seth Narottam Morarji Goculdas ;

Rai Ishvari Prasad ;

Honourable Babu Sukhbir Singh ;

Raja Prithvipal Singh (Bara Banki) ;

Dr. Satish Chandra Banerji ;

Honourable Dr. Tej Bahadur Sapru ;

Pt. Gokaran Nath Misra ;

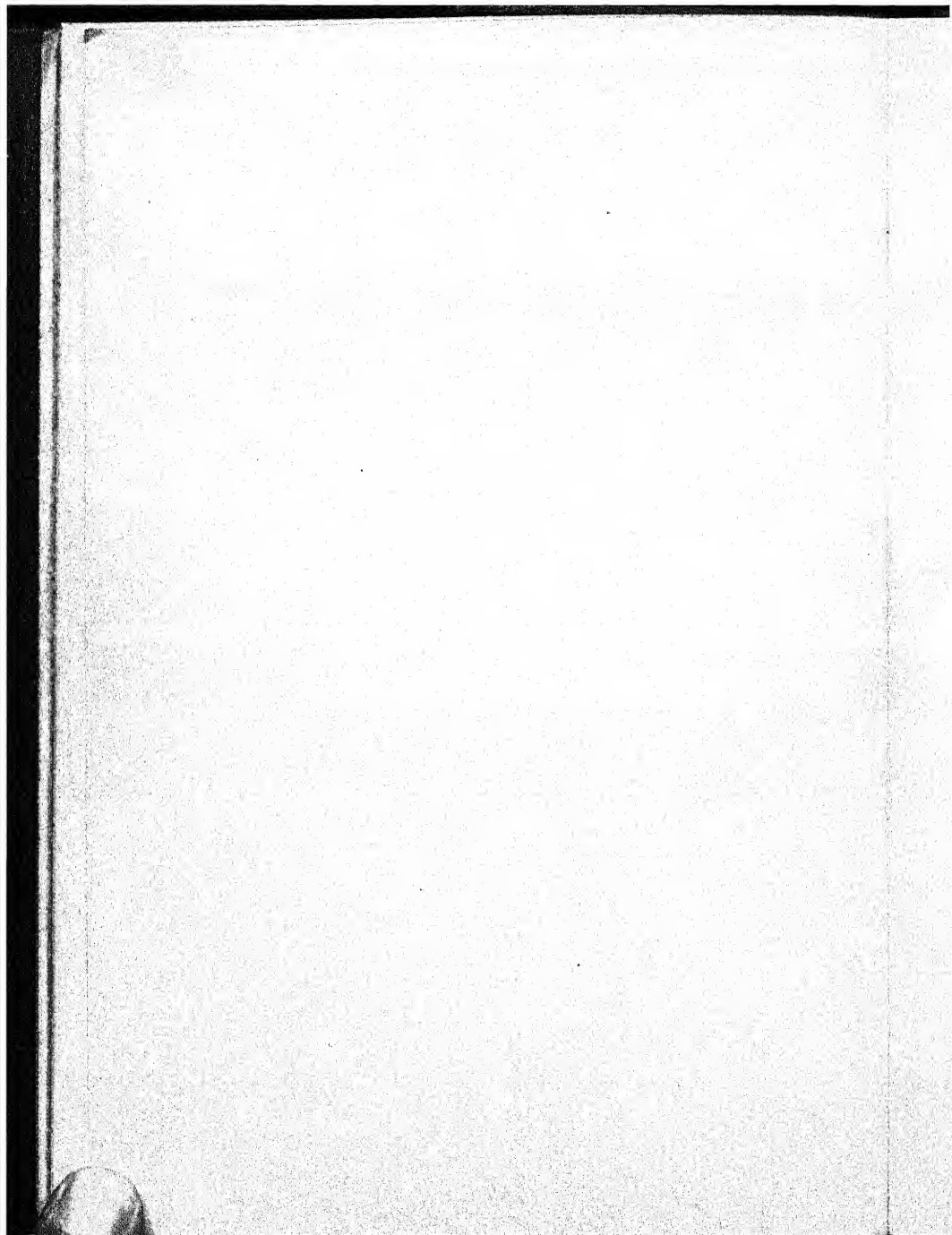
Babu Ayodhya Das ;

Honourable Maharaja Manindra Chandra Nandi
Bahadur ;

Honourable Sirdar Raja Daljit Singh ;

Honourable Raja Rampal Singh, C. I. E.

Bābā Gurbaksh Singh Bedi (Rawalpindi).



FOREWORD

THE Board of Trustees of the Central Hindu College has laid down the following principles on which religious and moral teaching is to be given in all institutions under its control.

The object of the Central Hindu College being to combine Hindu religious and ethical training with the western education suited to the needs of the time, it is necessary that this religious and ethical training shall be of a wide, liberal and unsectarian character, while at the same time it shall be definitely and distinctively Hindu. It must be inclusive enough to unite the most divergent forms of Hindu thought, but exclusive enough to leave outside it, forms of thought which are non-Hindu. It must avoid all doctrines which are the subject of controversy between schools recognised as orthodox ; it must not enter into any of the social and political questions of the day ; but it must lay a solid foundation of religion and ethics on which the student may build, in his manhood, the more specialised principles suited to his intellectual and emotional temperament. It must be directed to the building up of a character

—pious, dutiful, strong, self-reliant, upright, righteous, gentle and well-balanced—a character which will be that of a good man and a good citizen ; the fundamental principles of religion, governing the general view of life and of life's obligations, are alone sufficient to form such a character. That which unites Hindu-s in a common faith must be clearly and simply taught ; all that divides them must be ignored. Lastly, care must be taken to cultivate a wide spirit of tolerance, which not only respects the differences of thought and practice among Hindu-s, but which also respects the differences of religion among non-Hindu-s, regarding all faiths with reverence, as roads whereby men approach the Supreme.

Therefore :

1. The religious and ethical instruction must be such as all Hindu-s can accept.
2. It must include the special teachings which mark out Hinduism from other religions.
3. It must not include the distinctive views of any special school or sect.

This elementary Text-Book, written in accordance with this scheme, is intended for the use of Hindu boys in the middle and upper sections of the High Schools of India, and is designed to give them a general but correct idea of their national religion, such as may be filled in by fuller study in College and in later life, but will not need to be changed in any essential respect.

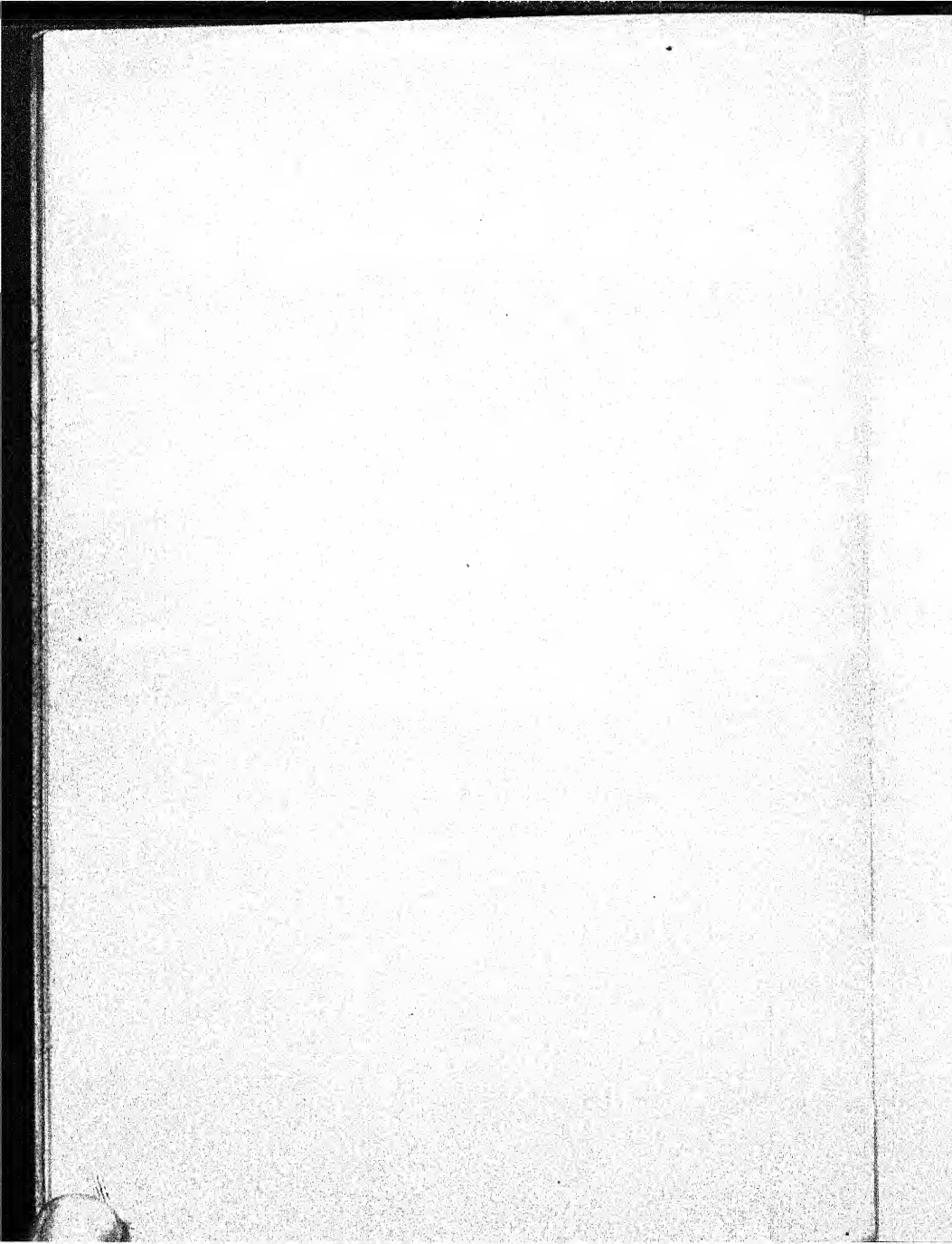
It contains the fundamental ideas and doctrines which are generally received as orthodox, but does not enter into the details as to which sectarian divisions have arisen. It is believed that while a sectarian parent or teacher will probably make additions to it, he will not find in it anything which he will wish positively to repudiate.

While the book may be placed in the hands of the boys for their own study, it is intended to be simplified by the oral explanations of the teacher, and each chapter serves as an outline on which one or more lessons may be based.

The s'loka-s given at the end of the chapters should be committed to memory by the boys. They will thus acquire a useful store of sacred authorities on their religion.

The name of this series, *Sanātana-dharma*, was chosen after full discussion, as best representing the idea of the fundamental truths presented. It has become somewhat of a sectarian name in some parts of India, but it is here taken only as meaning the eternal religion.

That this book may prove useful in laying a firm foundation of right thinking in the minds of Hindu youths, and may help in shaping them into pious, moral, loyal and useful citizens of their Motherland and of the Empire, is the prayer with which its compilers send it forth to the world.



CONTENTS

PART I

BASIC HINDU RELIGIOUS IDEAS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	15
CHAPTER	
I. The One Existence	24
II. The Many	33
III. Re-birth	46
IV. Karma	56
V. Sacrifice	67
VI. The Worlds—Visible and Invisible	77

PART II

GENERAL HINDU RELIGIOUS CUSTOMS AND RITES

I. The Saṃskāra-s	87
II. Ś'rāddha	92
III. Ś'aucam	96
IV. The Five Daily Sacrifices	103
V. Worship	108
VI. The Four Ās'rama-s	114
VII. The Four Castes	124
VIII. The Four Puruṣārtha-s	132

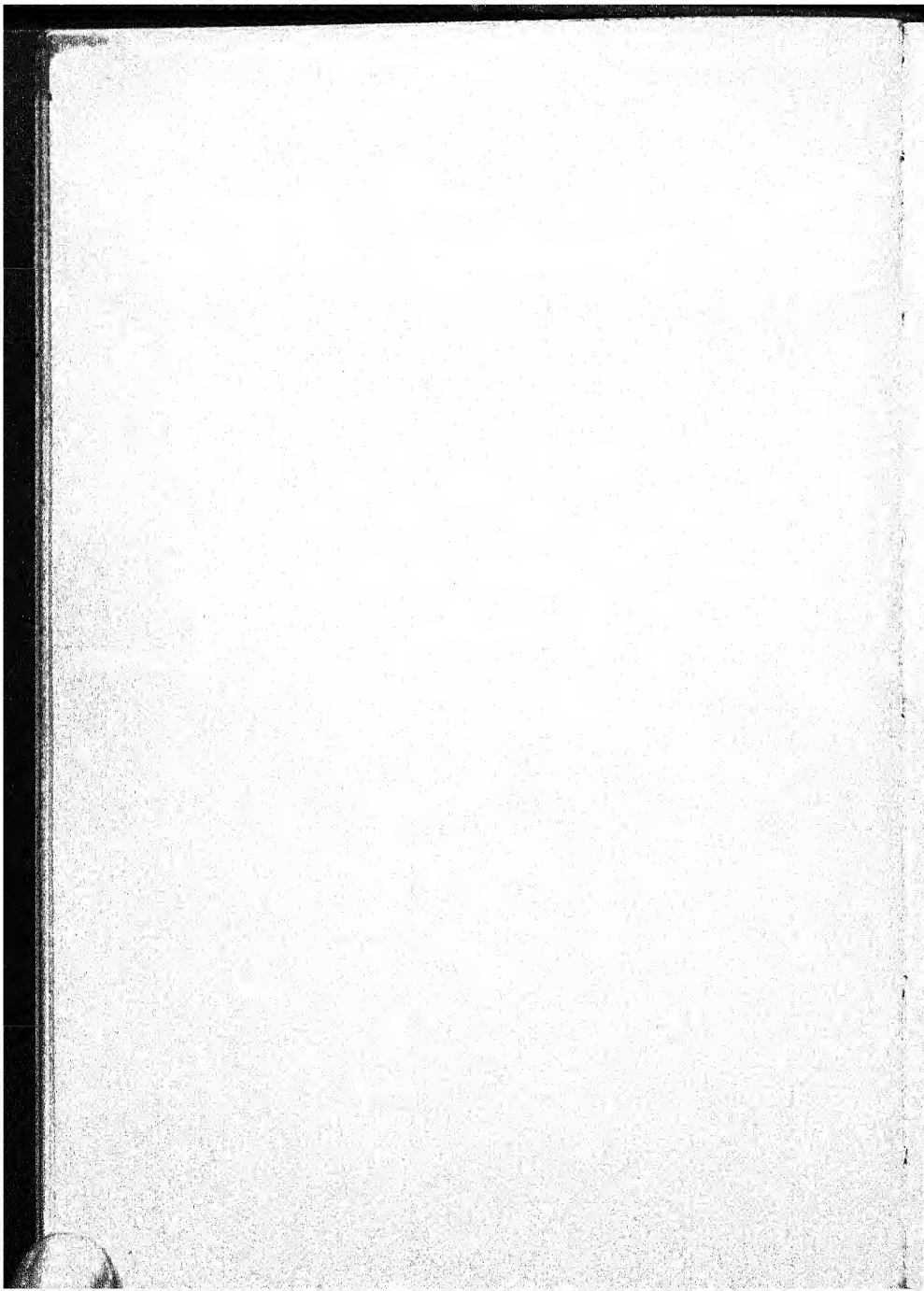
PART III

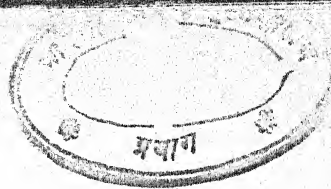
ETHICAL TEACHINGS

	PAGE
I. Ethical Science, What It Is	143
II. The Foundation of Ethics as Given by Religion	148
III. Right and Wrong	152
IV. The Standard of Ethics	160
V. Virtues and Their Foundation	163
VI. Bliss and Emotions	175
VII. Self-Regarding Virtues	181
VIII. Virtues and Vices in Relation to Superiors.	197
IX. Virtues and Vices in Relation to Equals .	217
X. Virtues and Vices in Relation to Inferiors .	248
XI. The Re-action of Virtues and Vices on each Other	268
Index	287

PART I

BASIC HINDU RELIGIOUS IDEAS





ॐ

मङ्गलं दिशतु नो विनायको मङ्गलं दिशतु नः सरस्वती ।
मङ्गलं दिशतु नः समुद्रजा मङ्गलं दिशतु नो महेश्वरी ॥

INTRODUCTION

SANĀTANA-DHARMA means the Eternal Religion, the Ancient Law, and it is based on the Veda-s, sacred books given to men many long ages ago. This Religion has also been called the Āryan Religion, because it is the Religion that was given to the first nation of the Āryan race; Ārya means noble, and the name was given to a great race, much finer in character and appearance than the races which went before it in the world's history. The first families of these people settled in the northern part of the land now called India, and that part in which they first settled was named Āryāvarta, because these Āryan-s lived in it. “(The land) from the eastern ocean to the western ocean, between the two mountains (Hima-vat and Vindhya), the wise call Āryāvarta.”

In later days the Religion was called the Hindu Religion, and this is the name by which it is now usually known. It is the oldest of living Religions, and no other Religion has produced so many great men—great teachers, great writers, great sages, great saints, great kings, great warriors, great statesmen, great benefactors, great patriots. The more you know of it, the more you will honour and love it, and the more thankful you will be that you were born into it. But unless you grow up worthy of it, this great and holy Religion will do you no good.

THE BASIS OF SANĀTANA-DHARMA

The Ancient Religion is based on one strong foundation on which are erected the walls of its structure.

The foundation is called श्रुतिः *S'rutiḥ*, "that which has been heard;" the walls are called स्मृतिः *Smṛtiḥ*, "that which has been remembered."

The *S'ruti* has been given through very wise men, who heard it and received it from *Deva-s*; these sacred teachings were not written down till comparatively modern times, but were learnt by heart, and constantly repeated.

The teacher sang them to his pupils, and the pupils sang them after him, a few words at a time,

over and over again, till they knew them thoroughly. Boys still learn the Śruti in the same way as their forefathers learnt it in very ancient days, and you may hear them chanting it in any Vaidika Pāṭha-sālā at the present time.

The Śruti consists of the चतुर्वेदाः Catur-vedāḥ, the Four Veda-s. Veda means knowledge, that which is known; and the knowledge which is the foundation of Religion is given to man in the Four Veda-s. They are named: ऋग्वेदः *R̥g-vedaḥ*; यजुर्वेदः *Yajur-vedaḥ*; सामवेदः *Sāma-vedaḥ*; and अथर्ववेदः *Atharva-vedaḥ*.

Each Veda is divided into three parts :

1. मन्त्रः Mantraḥ; or संहिता Samhitā, collection.
2. ब्राह्मणम् Brāhmaṇam.
3. उपनिषद् Upaniṣad.

The Mantra portion consists of Mantra-s, or sentences in which the order of sounds has a particular power, produces certain effects. These are in the form of hymns to the Deva-s—whose relations to men we shall study presently—and when they are properly chanted by properly instructed persons, certain results follow. These are used in religious ceremonies, and the value of the ceremony depends chiefly upon their proper repetition.

The Brāhmaṇa portion of the Veda-s consists of directions about ritual and explains how to perform the ceremonies in which were used the Mantra-s

given in the first part; and further, stories connected with them.

The Upaniṣad portion consists of deep philosophical teachings on the nature of Brahman, on the supreme and the separated Self, on man and the universe, on bondage and liberation. It is the foundation of all philosophy, and when you are men, you may study it and delight in it. Only highly educated men can study it; it is too difficult for others.

There was a fourth part of the Veda in the ancient days, sometimes called the उपवेदः Upa-vedaḥ, or तन्त्रम् Tantram; this consisted of science, and of practical instructions based on the science; but very little of the true ancient Tantra remains, as the Ṛṣi-s took them away as unsuitable for times in which people were less spiritual. Some Tāntrika forms of ritual are, however, used in worship, along with, or instead of, the current Vaidika forms. The books now extant under the name of Tantra-s are generally not regarded as part of the Veda.

That which is found in the Śruti is of supreme authority and is accepted by every faithful follower of the Sānātana-dharma as final. All the sects, all the philosophical systems, appeal to the Śruti as the final authority, determining every dispute.

The Smṛti or Dharma-sāstra, is founded on, and stands next in authority to, the Śruti, and consists

of four great works, written by Sages, the chief contents of which are laws and regulations for the carrying on of individual, family, social and national life. Hindu Society is founded on, and governed by, these laws. They are :

1. मनुस्मृतिः or मानवधर्मशास्त्रम् *Manu-smṛtiḥ* or *Mānava-dharma-sāstram*. *The Institutes of Manu*.
2. याज्ञवल्क्यस्मृतिः *Yājñā-valkya-smṛtiḥ*.
3. शङ्खलिखितस्मृतिः *S'ankha-Likhita-smṛtiḥ*.
4. पराशरस्मृतिः *Parāśara-smṛtiḥ*.

The first of these is the chief compendium of Āryan law, Manu being the great Law-giver of the race. Hindu chronology divides the history of a world into seven great periods or cycles of time, each of which is begun and is ended by a Manu, and is therefore called a Manv-antara, Manu-antara, "between (two) Manu-s."

"Six other Manu-s, very great-minded and of great splendour, belonging to the race of this Manu, the descendant of Svayaṃ-bhū, have each produced beings." As there are two Manu-s for each Manv-antara, that shows that we are in the fourth Manv-antara, under the rule of the seventh Manu, who is, the next śloka tells us, the son of Vivasvat. Some of his laws are handed down in the *Manu-smṛti*.

The *Yājñā-valkya-smṛti* follows the same general line as the *Manu-smṛti* and is next in importance to

it. The other two are not now much studied or referred to, except in some parts of Southern India.

While the *S'ruti* and the *Smṛti* are the foundation and the walls of the Sanātana-dharma, there are two other important supports like buttresses ; the पुराणानि *Purāṇāni*, *Purāṇa-s*, and the इतिहासः *Iti-hāsaḥ*, History.

The *Purāṇa-s* consist of histories and stories and allegories, composed for the use of the less learned part of the nation, especially for those who could not study the *Veda-s*. They are very interesting to read, and are full of information of all kinds. Some of the allegories are difficult to understand, and require the help of a teacher.

The *Itihāsa* comprises two great poems :

1. The रामायणम् *Rāmāyaṇam*, the history of *S'rī Rāma-candra*, the son of King *Daśa-ratha*, and of His wife *Sītā*, and of His brothers, a most interesting and delightful story, as you all know.

2. The महाभारतम् *Mahā-bhāratam*, the history of the *Kuru-s*, a royal family of Northern India, which split into two parties, the *Kuru-s* and the *Pāṇḍava-s*, between whom a great war broke out. It contains an immense number of beautiful stories, noble moral teachings, and useful lessons of all kinds.

These two books, the *Rāmāyaṇa* and the *Mahā-bhārata*, tell us most of what we know about ancient

India, about her people and customs, and her ways of living, and her arts, and her manufactures. If you read these, you will learn how great India once was, and you will also learn how you must behave to make her great once more.¹

THE SCIENCE AND PHILOSOPHY OF SĀNĀTANA-DHARMA

While the S'ruti and the Smṛti, the Purāṇa-s and the Itihāsa make the edifice of Hindu Religion, we find that the Religion itself has given rise to a splendid literature of Science and Philosophy.

The Science was divided into the षडङ्गानि Ṣaḍ-aṅ-gāni, the Six Aṅga-s, literally Limbs; and these six Limbs, or Branches, comprised what would now be called secular knowledge. In the old days religious and secular knowledge were not divided.

They included Grammar, Philology, Astrology, Poetry, together with sixty-four sciences and arts, and the method by which study should be carried on, so that any one who mastered the six aṅga-s was a man of varied and deep learning.

The Philosophy also had six divisions, the षड्दर्शनानि Ṣaḍ-dars'anāni, the Six Dars'ana-s, or

¹ Summaries of these have been given as lectures at the C. H. College, by Annie Besant, and are published as *The Story of the Great War, and S'rī Rāma-candra*.

ways of seeing things, usually called the Six Systems. They all have one object: the putting an end to pain by enabling the separated human selves to reunite with the supreme Self; and they all have one method—the development of ज्ञानम् *Jñānam*, Wisdom. The ways employed are different, to suit the different mental constitutions of men, so that they are like six different roads, all leading to one town.

As to what is contained in the Six Systems of philosophy, it will be enough for boys to know this:

The Nyāya and the Vaiśeṣika arrange all the things of the world into a certain number of kinds; then point out that a man knows all things by means of his senses, or by inference and analogy, or by testimony of other (wise and experienced) men; and then they explain how God has made all this material world out of atoms and molecules; finally they show how the highest and most useful knowledge is the knowledge of God, who is also the inmost Spirit of man, and how this knowledge is obtained in various ways.

The Sāṃkhya explains in more detail and in new ways the nature of पुरुषः *Puruṣaḥ*, Spirit, and of प्रकृतिः *Prakṛtiḥ*, Matter, and relation of each to the other.

The Yoga says that as there are now generally known five senses and five organs of action, so there are other subtler senses and organs; and explains more fully how they may be developed by men who

are seeking to know God, who is their own true inmost Spirit.

The Mīmāṃsā explains what karma is, *i.e.*, action, both religious and worldly, and what are its consequences, causes and effects, and how it binds man to this world or to another.

The Vedānta finally tells fully what is the exact and true nature of God, or Ātman, and shows that Jīva of man is in essence the same as this inmost God, and explains how man may live so that karma shall not bind him; and finally, by understanding what the Māyā-sakti of God is, by which all this world comes forth and appears and disappears, how he may (after practice of Yoga) merge himself into and become one with God and so gain Mokṣa.

CHAPTER I

THE ONE EXISTENCE

THERE is one Infinite Eternal, Changeless Existence, the ALL.

From THAT all comes forth ; to THAT all returns.

“ One only, without a second.”¹

THAT includes within Itself all that ever has been, is, and can be. As a wave rises in the ocean, a universe rises in the ALL. As the wave sinks again into the ocean, a universe sinks again into the ALL. As the ocean is water, and the wave a form or manifestation of the water, so is there one Existence, and the universe is a form, or manifestation, of the Existence. “ All this verily (is) Brahman.”²

This is the primary truth of Religion. Men have given to the ALL many different names. The name in the Sanātana-dharma is BRAHMAN. English-speaking people use the name GOD, adding, to make

¹ *Chāndo-gyōp.*, VI, ii, 1.

² *Ibid.*, III, xiv, 1, “ This ” is the technical name for a universe.

the meaning clear, "God in His own Nature." Sometimes the Hindu speaks of the ALL as Nir-guṇa-Brahman, the Brahman without attributes, or the unconditioned Brahman. This is to distinguish the unmanifested state of Brahman, the ALL, from the manifested state, in which Brahman is called the Sa-guṇa-Brahman, the Brahman with attributes, or the conditioned Brahman the Supreme Īsvara with His universe.

These are called: "the two states of Brahman;"¹ the subject is very difficult, and it is enough for a boy to understand that the Sa-guṇa-Brahman is Brahman revealed—not "a second," but Brahman shining forth as THE ONE, the Great Lord of Being, Thought and Bliss. He is the self-existent One, the Root and Cause of all beings. He is also sometimes called Puruṣottama, the Supreme Spirit, THE SELF. With Himself as Spirit He reveals the other side of the ALL, which is named Mūla-prakṛti, the Root of Matter. Prakṛti, Matter, is that which takes form, and so can give bodies of all sorts and shapes and kinds; all that we can touch, taste, smell, see, and hear, is Matter, and a great deal more besides, which our five senses are not yet developed enough to perceive. The solids, liquids and gases of the chemist are made of Matter; all the things round us, stones, trees, animals, men,

¹ *Bṛhad-āraṇyakop.*, II, iii, 1.

are made of Matter. But the whole of them is not Matter ; inaudible, invisible, unsmellable, untastable, intangible, the Spirit is in each, an अंशः *Aṃśaḥ*, a portion, of *Īśvara*. We call the Matter part a शरीरम् *S'arīram*, body ; or a कोशः *kośaḥ*,¹ sheath ; or an उपाधिः *Upādhiḥ*, vehicle ; that which embodies, clothes, or carries the Spirit. Thus *Īśvara* is in everything, and it is He who gives life to all things. He is आत्मा *Ātmā*, the Self, the Immortal, the Inner Ruler, dwelling in all objects, and there is nothing that can exist apart from Him. An *aṃśa* of Him in a body of matter is called a *Jīva*, or a *Jīvātman*, a separated Self.

There are some very important differences between Spirit and Matter, as well as the differences just spoken of : that the senses, when completely developed, can perceive Matter, while they cannot perceive Spirit, and that Matter takes form while Spirit is formless. It is the Spirit that is life, and that thinks, and feels, and observes, that is the " I " in each of us. And the Spirit is one and the same in everybody and in everything. But Matter cannot think, or feel, or observe ; it is जडम् *Jaḍam*, without consciousness. And it has also the tendency to be constantly dividing itself into many forms and to become many. So that Spirit and

¹ Spelt also कोषः *kośaḥ*.

Matter are said to be the opposites one of the other ; Spirit is called the knower, the one that knows, while Matter is called the object of knowledge, that which is known.

Students should try to understand these differences, and must never confuse Spirit and Matter ; they are opposites, the first “ pair of opposites,” out of which a universe is built up.

Just as Spirit has three qualities, सत् चित् आनन्दम् Sat Cit Ānandam—Being, Thought-Power and Bliss, so has Matter three qualities, तमः रजः सत्त्वम् Tamah, Rajaḥ, Sattvam—Inertia, Mobility, Rhythm. Inertia gives resistance and stability to Matter ; Mobility keeps Matter active, moving about ; Rhythm makes the movements regular. You may say : “ A stone does not move of itself.” But science tells you that every particle in that stone—particles too small for you to see—is moving rapidly and regularly to and fro, is vibrating, to use the scientific term.

The शक्तिः Śaktiḥ, or the Divine Power of Īśvara, which makes Matter begin to take form, is called माया Māyā, and sometimes दैवी प्रकृतिः Daivī-prakṛtiḥ, the Divine Prakṛti. S'rī Kṛṣṇa speaks of “ My Divine Prakṛti ” as “ My other Prakṛti, the higher, the life-element, by which the universe is upheld.”¹

The student may think of the great pair of opposites, Īśvara and Mūla-prakṛti, standing, as it were,

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, vii, 5.

face to face and the Divine Power of Īsvara shining out on Mūla-prakṛti and making the qualities, called गुणाः guṇāḥ, act on each other, so that many forms begin to appear. This Divine power is Māyā, and so Īsvara is called the Lord of Māyā.

Even young students must try to remember these names, and what they mean, for they cannot otherwise understand the teaching of the *Bhagavad-gītā*, which every Hindu boy must try to understand. It may be well to say that the word Prakṛti is generally used instead of Mūla-prakṛti, the prefix Mūla, Root, being usually left out.

ज्ञेयं यत्तत्प्रवक्ष्यामि यज्ज्ञात्वा ऽमृतमश्नुते ।
 अनादिमत्परं ब्रह्म न सत्तन्नासदुच्यते ॥
 सर्वतःपाणिपादं तत्सर्वतोऽक्षिशिरोमुखम् ।
 सर्वतः श्रुतिमहोके सर्वमावृत्य तिष्ठति ॥
 सर्वेन्द्रियगुणाभासं सर्वेन्द्रियविवर्जितम् ।
 असक्तं सर्वभृच्चैव निर्गुणं गुणभोक्तृ च ॥
 बहिरन्तश्च भूतानामचरं चरमेव च ।
 सूक्ष्मत्वात्तदविज्ञेयं दूरस्थं चान्तिके च तत् ॥
 अविभक्तं च भूतेषु विभक्तमिव च स्थितम् ।
 भूतभर्तृ च तज्ज्ञेयं प्रसिष्णु प्रमविष्णु च ॥
 ज्योतिषामपि तज्ज्योतिस्तमसः परमुच्यते ।
 ज्ञानं ज्ञेयं ज्ञानगम्यं हृदि सर्वस्य विष्ठितम् ॥¹

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xiii, 12-17.

“ I will declare that which ought to be known, that which being known immortality is enjoyed—the beginningless supreme Brahman, called neither Being nor Not-Being.

“ Everywhere THAT has hands and feet, everywhere eyes, heads and mouths; all-hearing, He dwelleth in the world, enveloping all;

“ Shining with all sense-faculties, without any sense; unattached, supporting everything; and free from qualities, enjoying qualities.

“ Without and within all beings, immovable and also movable; by a reason of his subtlety indistinguishable; at hand and far away is THAT.

“ Not divided amid beings and yet seated distributively. THAT is to be known as the supporter of beings; He devours and He generates.

“ THAT, the Light of all lights, is said to be beyond darkness; wisdom, the object of wisdom, by wisdom to be reached, seated in the hearts of all.”

आसीदिदं तमोभूतमप्रज्ञातमलक्षणम् ।

अप्रतर्क्यमविज्ञेयं प्रसुप्तमिव सर्वतः ॥

ततः स्वयंभूर्भगवानव्यक्तो व्यञ्जयन्निदम् ।

महाभूतादि वृत्तौजाः प्रादुरासीत्तमोनुदः ॥

यो ऽसावतीन्द्रियग्राह्यः सूक्ष्मो ऽव्यक्तः सनातनः ।

सर्वभूतमयो ऽचिन्त्यः स एव स्वयमुद्भवौ ॥¹

¹ *Manu-smṛiti* i, 5, 6, 7.

"This was in the form of Darkness, unknown, without marks [or homogeneous], unattainable by reasoning, unknowable, wholly, as it were, in sleep.

"Then the self-Existent, the Lord, unmanifest, (but) making manifest. This—the great elements and the rest—appeared with mighty power, Dispel-ler of Darkness.

"He who can be grasped by that which is beyond the senses, subtle, unmanifest, ancient, containing all beings, inconceivable, even He Himself shone forth."

अहमात्मा गुडाकेश सर्वभूताशयस्थितः ।

अहमादिश्च मध्यं च भूतानामन्त एव च ॥ ¹

"I, O Guḍākeśa, am the SELF, seated in the heart of all beings; I am the beginning, the middle, and also the end of all beings."

द्वाविमौ पुरुषौ लोके क्षरश्चाक्षर एव च ।

क्षरः सर्वाणि भूतानि कूटस्थो ऽक्षर उच्यते ॥

उत्तमः पुरुषस्त्वन्यः परमात्मेत्युदाहृतः ।

यो लोकत्रयमाविश्य विभर्त्यव्यय ईश्वरः ॥

यस्मात्क्षरमतीतो ऽहमक्षरादपि चोत्तमः ।

अतो ऽस्मि लोके वेदे च प्रथितः पुरुषोत्तमः ॥ ²

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, x, 20.

² *Ibid.*, xv, 16—18.

“There are two Puruṣa-s in this-world, the destructible and the indestructible ; the destructible is all beings, the unchanging is called the indestructible.

“The highest Puruṣa is verily another, declared as the Supreme SELF ; He who pervading all, sustaineth the three worlds, the indestructible Īsvara.

“Since I excel the destructible, and am more excellent also than the indestructible, in the world and in the Veda I am proclaimed Pruṣottama.”

ममैवांशो जीवलोके जीवभूतः सनातनः ।

मनःषष्ठानीन्द्रियाणि प्रकृतिस्थानि कर्षति ॥ ¹

“A portion of Mine own Self, transformed in the world of life into an immortal Spirit, draweth round itself the senses, of which the mind is the sixth, veiled in matter.

समं सर्वेषु भूतेषु तिष्ठन्तं परमेश्वरम् ।

विनश्यत्स्वविनश्यन्तं यः पश्यति स पश्यति ॥

यदा भूतपृथग्भावमेकस्थमनुपश्यति ।

तत एव च विस्तारं ब्रह्म संपद्यते तदा ॥

यथा प्रकाशयत्येकः कृत्स्नं लोकमिमं रविः ।

क्षेत्रं क्षेत्री तथा कृत्स्नं प्रकाशयति भारत ॥ ²

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xv, 7.

² *Ibid.*, xiii, 27, 30, 33.

“ Seated equally in all beings, the supreme Īsvara, unperishing within the perishing; he who thus seeth, he seeth.

“ When he perceiveth the diversified existence of beings as rooted in ONE and spreading forth from It, then he reacheth Brahman.

“ As the one sun illumineth the whole earth so the Lord of the field, illumineth the whole field, O Bhārata.”

भूमिरापो ऽनलो वायुः खं मनो बुद्धिरेव च ।

अहंकार इतीयं मे भिन्ना प्रकृतिरष्टधा ॥

अपरेयमितस्त्वन्यां प्रकृतिं विद्धि मे पराम् ।

जीवभूतां महाबाहो ययेदं धार्यते जगत् ॥ ¹

“ Earth, Water, Fire, Air, Ether, Mind and Reason also and Egoism—these are the eight-fold divisions of my Prakṛti.

“ This the inferior. Know my other Prakṛti, the higher, the life-element, O mighty-armed, by which the universe is upheld.”

सत्त्वं रजस्तम इति गुणाः प्रकृतिसंभवाः ।

निबध्नन्ति महाबाहो देहे देहिनमव्ययम् ॥ ²

“ Sattva, Rajas, Tamas, these are the Guṇa-s, born of Prakṛti; they bind fast in the body, O great-armed one, the indestructible dweller in the body.”

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, vii, 4, 5.

² *Ibid.*, xiv, 5.

CHAPTER II

THE MANY

WHEN Īsvara shines out on Prakṛti and makes it fall into shapes, the first Forms that appear are those of the त्रिमूर्ति: Tri-mūrtiḥ, the three Aspects of Īsvara, manifested to cause a ब्रह्माण्डम् Brahmanḍam, *literally* an Egg of Brahmā, a universe, or orderly system of worlds. The Aspect of Īsvara in which He creates the worlds is named Brahmā ; Brahmā is the Creator. The aspect of Īsvara in which He preserves, takes care of, and maintains the worlds is named Viṣṇu ; Viṣṇu is the Preserver. The aspect of Īsvara in which He dissolves the worlds, when they are worn out and of no further use, is named Ś'iva, or Mahā-deva ; Ś'iva is the Dissolver of the worlds. These are the first manifestations of Īsvara, His Supreme Forms, His three Aspects, or Faces. The ONE, the Sa-guṇa-Brahman, or the Supreme Īsvara, appears as Three.

Brahmā, the Creator, shapes matter into seven तत्त्वानि Tattvāni, Elements, as they have been

called.¹ Different names are given to the first two ; we may use the names Mahad-Buddhi, Pure Reason, and Ahaṁ-kāra, Egoism, the principle of separation, breaking up matter into tiny particles, called atoms. Then come the remaining five Tattva-s : Ākāśa, Ether ; Vāyu, Air ; Agni, Fire ; Ap, Water ; Pṛthivī, Earth. This is called the creation of the भूतादि Bhūtādi, Elements, and out of these all things are partly made. There is more of Tamo-guṇa than of Rajo-guṇa and of Sattva-guṇa showing itself in these elements, and so the things composed chiefly of them are dull and inert ; the inner life, the Jīva, cannot show its powers, for the coat of matter is so thick and heavy.

Next after the Elements, the ten Indriya-s are created ; these were at first only ideas in the mind of Brahmā, and later were clothed in the Elements ; they are the five centres of the senses : smell, taste, sight, touch, hearing, the organs of which are the nose, tongue, eyes, skin and ears ; and the five centres of action, the organs of which are hands, feet, and those of speech, generation and excretion. There is more of Rajo-guṇa than of Tamo-guṇa and of Sattva-guṇa shewing itself in these Indriya-s, so they are very active, and the inner life, the Jīva, can show more of its powers in them.

¹ The western chemist uses the word in a different sense, but the old meaning is the one we are concerned with.

After the Indriya-s, Brahmā created in His mind the Deva-s who are connected with the senses, and also Manaḥ, the mind, which is sometimes called the sixth Indriya, when the first five are spoken of, and the eleventh, when the ten are taken ; because it draws into itself and arranges and thinks over all the sensations collected by the Indriya-s from the outer world. There is more of Sattva-guṇa than of Tamo-guṇa and of Rajo-guṇa showing itself in these Deities and Manaḥ.

The student must remember that these guṇa-s are never separated, but one guṇa may be more dominant than another in any particular being. When Tamo-guṇa dominates, the being is called tāmasik ; when Rajo-guṇa dominates, the being is called rājasik ; when Sattva-guṇa dominates, the being is called sātṭvik. All things may be divided under these three heads of sātṭvik, rājasik, and tāmasik.¹

Brahmā next created, in His mind the hosts of Deva-s who carry out, administer the laws of Īsvara, and see to the proper management of all the worlds. Īsvara is the King, the One Lord, and the Deva-s are His ministers, like the ministers and officials of an earthly king. The students must never confuse the Deva-s with the supreme Īsvara, with Brahman. They are His higher officials for the

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xiv, xvii and xviii.

Brahmāṇḍa, as we men are His lower officials for this one particular world.

The Deva-s, sometimes called Sura-s, see that each man gets what he has earned by his karma.¹ They give success and failure in worldly things, according to what a man deserves ; they help men in many ways, when men try to serve them, and much of the bad weather and sickness and famine and other national troubles come from men entirely neglecting the duties they owe to the Deva-s. The Deva-s are a vast multitude, divided under their five Rulers, Indra, Vāyu, Agni, Varuṇa and Kubera. Indra has to do with the ether ; Vāyu with the air ; Agni with the fire ; Varuṇa with the water ; Kubera with the earth. The Deva-s under each have different names, as we see in the Purāṇa-s and the Itihāsa. The student may have read, for instance, how Bhīma fought with the Yakṣa-s, who were the servants of Kubera.

In these Deva-s the Rajo-guṇa dominates ; Manu says that their " nature is action."

The Asura-s, the enemies of the Deva-s, embody the resistance, or inertia, of matter, and in them Tamo-guṇa is predominant.

Brahmā then created in His mind minerals, plants, animals and men, thus completing the picture of the worlds wherein the unfolding of the powers of

¹ Karma is explained in Chapter IV.

the Jīva—what is now called Evolution—was to take place. In Samskr̥t this world-evolution, or world-process, is called संसारः Samsārah, and it is compared to a wheel, constantly, turning, on which all Jīva-s are bound.

Thus Brahmā completed His share of the great task of a universe, but the forms needed, to be clothed in physical matter, to be made active beings; this was the work of Viṣṇu, the All-pervader, the Maintainer and Preserver of the worlds. He breathed His life into all these forms, and, as a Purāṇa says, became, Prāṇa in all forms and gave them consciousness. Then all the Brahmāṇḍa “became full of life and consciousness.” But even this was not enough, when man came upon the scene. Two Aspects of Īsvara had given Their Life, but the third Aspect remained, the One who dissolves forms and thus liberates the Jīva-s, calling them to union and bliss. The life of Mahā-deva must be poured out to complete the triple Jīva of man, that he might be the perfect reflexion of the triple Īsvara. This was done, and the human Jīva began his long evolution, having already passed through, evolved through, the mineral, vegetable and animal kingdoms in previous kalpa-s. A very beautiful description of the evolution through plants and animals to men, until “in man Ātman is manifest,” and “by the mortal he desires the immortal,” may be read by

elder students in the *Aitareyāranyaka*,¹ and will be found in the *Advanced Text-Book*.

The special manifestations of Viṣṇu, called Avatāra-s, must not be forgotten. The word means One who descends, from *tṛī* passing over, the prefix "ava" giving the significance of descending. It is applied to Divine manifestations of a peculiar kind, in which the Deity incarnates in some form to bring about some special result. When things are going badly with the world, and special help is needed to keep the world on the road of right evolution, then Viṣṇu comes down in some appropriate form, and puts things right.

Ten of His Avatāra-s are regarded as more important than the others, and are often spoken of as "the Ten Avatāra-s."

1. MATSYA, the fish.—Vaivasvata-Manu once saw a little fish, gasping for water, and put it into a bowl; it grew, and He placed it in a larger pot; then again in a larger, and then in a tank, a pond, a river, the sea, and ever the Fish grew and filled its receptacle. Then the Manu knew that this Fish was connected with his own life-work, and when the time came for Him to save the seeds of life from a great flood, He entered a ship with the Ṛṣi-s and the necessary life-seeds, the great Fish appeared, and drew the vessel to the world where lay the

¹ II, iii, 2.

Manu's work. With the coming of the Fish began the great evolution of animal life in the world.

2. KŪRMA, the Tortoise.—As the tortoise, Viṣṇu, supported the whirling mountain, which churned the great sea of matter, that it might give forth the necessary forms. The Tortoise is the type of the next great step in evolution.

3. VARĀHA, the Boar.—The earth was sunk below the waters, and Viṣṇu raised it up, giving, in the Boar, the type of the great mammalian kingdom which was to flourish on the dry land.

Modern Science recognises these three great stages of evolution, each marked in Hinduism by an Avatāra.

4. NARA-SIMHA, the Man-Lion.—This was the Avatāra that came to free the earth from the tyranny of the Daitya-s. Into this race a child, Prahlāda, was born, who from earliest childhood was devoted to Viṣṇu, despite the threats and the cruelties of his Daitya father. Over and over again the father tried to slay the son, but ever Viṣṇu intervened to save him ; at last He burst from a pillar in the form of a Man-Lion, and slew the Daitya King.

5. VĪMANA, the Dwarf.—At last He came as man, to aid the evolution of the human race, and gained from Bali the right to all He could cover in three steps ; one step covered the earth, and thus He won for man the field of his evolution.

7. RĀMA, usually called Rāma-candra, the son of Dasa-ratha.—He, with His three brothers, came as the ideal Kṣattriya, the model King, and He serves as an example of a perfect human life. An obedient and loving son, a tender husband, an affectionate brother, a gallant warrior, a wise ruler, a diligent protector of His people, He is emphatically The Perfect Man. His splendid story is told in Vālmiki's *Rāmāyaṇa*, and the lovely version of Tulsī Dās is known in every northern Indian home.

9. BUDDHA, the gentle prince who gave up throne and luxury to become a travelling mendicant, Teacher of the Truth.—He is known as S'ākya-muni, as Gautama, as Siddhārtha, and is the founder

of a mighty faith, followed by millions of the human race. In him Viṣṇu teaches vast multitudes of non-Āryan peoples.

10. KALKI—the Avatāra who shall close the Kali-yuga, and whose coming is yet in the future. When He comes, the Satya-yuga, will return to earth, a new cycle will begin.

The development and perfection of the human type is indicated by these Avatāra-s.

पश्यामि देवांस्तव देव देहे सर्वास्तथा भूतविशेषसंवान् ।
ब्रह्माणमीशं कमलासनस्थमृषींश्च सर्वानुरगांश्च दिव्यान् ॥
रुद्रादित्या वसवो ये च साध्या विश्वे ऽश्विनौ मरुतश्चोष्मपाश्च ।
गन्धर्वयक्षासुरसिद्धसंघा वीक्षन्ते त्वां विस्मिताश्चैव सर्वे ॥¹

“ Within Thy Form, O God, the Gods I see,
All grades of being with distinctive marks ;
Brahmā the Lord, upon His lotus-throne,
The Ṛṣi-s all, and Serpents, the Divine.
Rudra-s, Vasu-s, Sādhyā-s and Āditya-s,
Viśva-s, the Asvin-s, Marut-s, Ūṣma-pā-s,
Gandharva-s, Yakṣa-s, Siddha-s, Asura-s,
In wondering multitudes beholding Thee.”

इन्द्रं मित्रं वरुणमग्निमाहुरथो दिव्यः स सुपर्णो गरुत्मान् ।
एकं सद्विप्रा बहुधा वदन्त्यग्निं यमं मातरिश्वानमाहुः ॥²

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xi, 15 and 22.

² *R̥g-veda*, I, clxiv, 46.

“Indra, Mitra, Varuṇa, Agni, they call him, and He is the radiant golden-feathered Garut-mat. Of Him who is one, Sages speak as manifold; they call him Agni, Yama, Mātarisvan.

आत्मैव देवताः सर्वाः सर्वमात्मन्यवस्थितम् ।¹

“All the Gods (are) even the Self : all rests on the Self.

एतमेके वदन्यग्निं मनुमन्ये प्रजापतिम् ।

इन्द्रमेके ऽपरे प्राणमपरे ब्रह्म शाश्वतम् ॥²

“Some call Him Agni, others Manu, (others) Prajā-pati, some Indra, others Life-breath, others the eternal Brahman.”

यथा सुदीप्तात्पावकाद्विस्फुलिङ्गाः सहस्रशः प्रभवन्ते सरूपाः ।

तथा ऽक्षराद्विविधाः सोम्य भावाः प्रजायन्ते तत्र चैवापि यन्ति ॥

एतस्माज्जायते प्राणो मनः सर्वेन्द्रियाणि च ।

खं वायुर्ज्योतिरापः पृथिवी विश्वस्य धारिणी ॥

तस्माच्च देवा बहुधा संप्रसूताः साध्या मनुष्याः पशवो वयांसि ।³

“As from a blazing fire, sparks, all similar to each other, spring forth in thousands, so from the

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, xii, 119.

² *Ibid.*, 123.

³ *Munḍakop.*, II, i, 1, 3, 7.

Indestructible, O beloved, various types of being are born, and they also return thither. . . .

“From That are born Breath, Mind, and all the Senses, Ether, Air, Fire, Water, and Earth, the support of all. . . .

“From that in various ways are born, the Gods, Sādhya-s, Men, Beasts, Birds.

सत्त्वात्संजायते ज्ञानं रजसो लोभ एव च ।

प्रमादमोहौ तमसो भवतो ऽज्ञानमेव च ॥

ऊर्ध्वं गच्छन्ति सत्त्वस्था मध्ये तिष्ठन्ति राजसाः ।

जघन्यगुणवृत्तिस्था अधो गच्छन्ति तामसाः ॥¹

“From Sattva wisdom is born, and also greed from Rajas ; negligence and delusion are of Tamas, and also unwisdom.

“They rise upwards who are settled in Sattva ; the Rājasic dwell in the midmost place. The Tāmasic go downwards, enveloped in the vilest qualities.”

सत्त्वं सुखे सञ्जयति रजः कर्मणि भारत ।

ज्ञानमावृत्य तु तमः प्रमादे सञ्जयत्युत ॥

रजस्तमश्चाभिभूय सत्त्वं भवति भारत ।

रजः सत्त्वं तमश्चैव तमः सत्त्वं रजस्तथा ॥

सर्वद्वारेषु देहे ऽस्मिन्प्रकाश उपजायते ।

ज्ञानं यदा तदा विद्याद्विवृद्धे सत्त्वमित्युत ॥

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xiv, 17, 18.

लोभः प्रवृत्तिरारम्भः कर्मणामशमः स्पृहा ।

रजस्येतानि जायन्ते विवृद्धे भरतर्षभ ॥

अप्रकाशो ऽप्रवृत्तिश्च प्रमादो मोह एव च ।

तमस्येतानि जायन्ते विवृद्धे कुरुनन्दन ॥¹

“Sattva attacheth to bliss, Rajas to action, O Bhārata, Tamas, verily, having shrouded wisdom, attacheth on the contrary, to heedlessness.

“(Now) Sattva prevaiileth, having overpowered Rajas and Tamas, O Bhārata ; (now) Rajas (having overpowered) Tamas and Sattva, (now) Tamas, (having overpowered) Rajas and Sattva.

“When the wisdom-light streameth forth from all the gates of the body, then it may be known that Sattva is increasing.

“Greed, outgoing energy, undertaking of actions, restlessness, desire—these are born of the increase of Rajas, O best of the Bhārata-s.

“Darkness, stagnation and heedlessness, and also delusion—these are born of the increase of Tamas, O joy of the Kuru-s.”

यदा यदा हि धर्मस्य ग्लानिर्भवति भारत ।

अभ्युत्थानमधर्मस्य तदा ऽऽत्मानं सृजाम्यहम् ॥

परित्राणाय साधूनां विनाशाय च दुष्कृताम् ।

धर्मसंस्थापनार्थाय संभवामि युगे युगे ॥²

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xiv, 9-13.

² *Ibid.*, iv, 7, 8.

“ When dharma decays, when a-dharma is exalted,
then I Myself come forth ;

“ For the protection of the good, for the destruction of evil-doers, for firmly establishing dharma,
I am born from age to age.”

CHAPTER III

RE-BIRTH

THE evolution spoken of in the last chapter is carried on by the Jīva passing from body to body, the bodies improving as his powers unfold ; this is called re-birth, re-incarnation, or transmigration. The word re-incarnation means literally taking flesh again, coming again into a physical body. The word transmigration means passing from one place to another—passing into a new body. Either word can be used equally well. Let us see what is the process described by these words.

The Jīva, we have seen, is a portion of Brahman, “a portion of myself, a Jīva,” says S’rī Kṛṣṇa. He contains the powers of Brahman, is Brahman. “Thou art That,” the S’ruti teaches. But yet there is a difference in Space and Time, as the seed is different from the tree. The tree produces a seed, giving it its own nature ; it drops the seed on the ground, and the seed slowly grows, putting out its hidden powers, until it becomes a tree like its parent ;

it *can become nothing else*, because its nature is the same as that of the parent. And so with the Jīva; like a seed he is dropped into matter by Īsvara, he slowly grows, putting out his hidden powers, until he becomes Īsvara; he *can become nothing else*, because his nature is the same as that of his Parent, Īsvara.

Īsvara is said to be wise and powerful, Jīva to be unwise and powerless;¹ but the Jīva grows into wisdom and power, and that growth is what is called Evolution.

We have seen that the Jīva begins in the mineral kingdom his long pilgrimage through the physical world. At that stage he is unconscious of the outer world. His attention is called to it, its existence is forced on him, by violent shocks and blows from outside; earthquakes, volcanoes, land-slips, the rolling of the furious surf, these and many other violent agencies arouse the Jīva's attention to the fact that he is not alone, that there is something outside him. If the student reads the accounts of the very early periods of the earth's history, he will be struck by the number of big catastrophies; all these were necessary to awaken the Jīva-s. After a very very long time, the Jīva-s were sufficiently awake to be fit for softer and more flexible bodies than minerals, and they went on into plants, while others, coming

¹ *Svetāśva-tarop.*, i, 9.

out later from Īsvara, took their places in the mineral kingdom.

The Jīva-s in the plants now became more conscious of the outer world, feeling the warm sun, and the gentle breezes, and the life-giving rain. As they grew older and more sensitive, they passed into the longer-lived plants, such as shrubs and trees, and in these more of their inner powers unfolded, till they were ready to go on into the animal kingdom, while the younger ones came on into the vegetable kingdom, and others still younger into the minerals.

And now in the animal kingdom the Jīva-s got on much faster, and by hunting for food, and fighting and outwitting each other, the senses and the simple mental powers were brought out and strengthened; until at last the animal forms were no longer good enough for them, and they needed the human in order that their evolution should not stop.

The student may ask: What makes the forms evolve to suit the Jīva? The Jīva's own efforts. He wants to look out through the wall of matter that encloses him; he tries to see, and his outwardgoing energy works on the wall, and slowly, very very slowly, evolves an eye; and so with all the senses and all the organs. The senses are pierced from within outwards, we are taught. The Jīva shapes them all to suit himself, so that he can use

his powers in the outer world, and the Deva-s help him by giving him materials that are suited to the organ he wants to build. When he is trying to see, Agni gives him some of his own fiery matter, which vibrates when touched by rays of light. When he wants to taste, Varuṇa gives him some of his own watery matter, which makes tasting possible. And so on. In this way he makes his bodies, and when he has shaped one as much as he can, and it is of no further use to him, he throws it away and makes another. He evolves faster and faster as he goes on, because his powers, as they work more freely, can bring about results much more quickly than in the earlier stages.

This is the general process of evolution, and the succession has been told about as though it were unbroken, so that the student may grasp the main idea. But, in nature, while the general stream is onwards, there are many little twists and turnings and runnings up into bye-ways. A Jīva may slip backwards for a time, stay a while in a stage that he has long left behind him. There is something he has not quite learned, some power he has not quite evolved, and he falls by this into a lower stage again as a boy at school, if he were idle, might be put back into a lower class. A Jīva which has reached the human stage may be attached to an animal, or to a plant, or, if he be *very* tāmasic, even

to a stone, till he has learned to use the human form better. Then he is like a man in prison, shut out from human society, and unable to use his human powers, for want of freedom.

But the Jīva is not to be tied for ever to the wheel of births and deaths. The ropes that tie him to this wheel are his desires. So long as he desires objects that belong to this earth, he must come back to this earth in order to possess and enjoy these objects. But when he ceases to desire these objects, then the ropes are broken, and he is free. He need not be born any more; he has reached liberation. He is then called a Mukta, a free Jīva.

Often Mukta-s remain in this world to help its progress, so that other Jīva-s may get free sooner than they otherwise would. We read about such Mukta-s in the Veda-s and Purāṇa-s and the Itihāsa; sometimes they are great Ṛṣi-s or Kings, and sometimes they are quite simple people. But whatever they may be in outside appearance, they are pure and unselfish and calm, and live only to help others. They are content to labour for the good of the world, and they know that they are one with Īsvara.

देहिनो ऽस्मिन्यथा देहे कौमारं यौवनं जरा ।
तथा देहान्तरप्राप्तिर्धीरस्तत्र न मुह्यति ॥¹

“As the dweller in the body experienceth, in the body, childhood, youth and old age, so passeth he on to another body. The steadfast one grieveth not thereat.”

अन्तवन्त इमे देहा नित्यस्योक्ताः शरीरिणः ।
अनाशिनो ऽप्रमेयस्य तस्माद्युध्यस्व भारत ॥
य एनं वेत्ति हन्तारं यश्चैनं मन्यते हतम् ।
उभौ तौ न विजानीतो नायं हन्ति न हन्यते ॥
न जायते म्रियते वा कदाचिन्नायं भूत्वा भविता वा न भूयः ।
अजो नित्यः शाश्वतो ऽयं पुराणो न हन्यते हन्यमाने शरीरे ॥
वेदाविनाशिनं नित्यं य एनमजमव्ययम् ।
कथं स पुरुषः पार्थ कं घातयति हन्ति कम् ॥
वासांसि जीर्णानि यथा विहाय नवानि गृह्णाति नरो ऽपराणि ।
तथा शरीराणि विहाय जीर्णान्यन्यानि संयाति नवानि देही ॥
देही नित्यमवध्यो ऽयं देहे सर्वस्य भारत ।
तस्मात्सर्वाणि भूतानि न त्वं शोचितुमर्हसि ॥²

“These bodies of the embodied One who is eternal, indestructible and boundless, are known as finite. Therefore fight, O Bhārata.

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, ii, 13.

² *Ibid.*, ii, 18-22 and 30.

“ He who regardeth this as a slayer, and he who thinketh he is slain, both of them are ignorant. He slayeth not, nor is he slain.

“ He is not born, nor doth he die : nor, having been, ceaseth he any more to be ; unborn, perpetual, eternal and ancient, he is not slain when the body is slaughtered.

“ Who knoweth him indestructible, perpetual, unborn, undiminishing, how can that man slay, O Pārtha, or cause to be slain ?

“ As a man, casting off worn-out garments, taketh new ones, so the dweller in the body, casting off worn-out bodies, entereth into others that are new.

“ This dweller in the body of every one is ever invulnerable, O Bhārata. Therefore thou shouldst not grieve for any creature.”

तद्यथा पेशस्कारी पेशसो मात्रामुपादायान्यन्नवतरं कल्याणतरं
रूपं तनुत एवमेवायमात्मेदं शरीरं निहत्याविद्यां गमयित्वा ऽन्यन्न-
वतरं कल्याणतरं रूपं कुरुते ॥¹

“ As a goldsmith, having taken a piece of gold, maketh another form, new and more beautiful, so verily the Ātman having cast off his body and having put away A-vidyā, maketh another new and more beautiful form.”

¹ *Bṛhad-āraṇyakop.*, IV, iv, 4.

ब्रह्मण्याधाय कर्माणि सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा करोति यः ।
 लिप्यते न स पापेन पद्मपत्रमिवाम्भसा ॥
 कायेन मनसा बुद्ध्या केवलैरिन्द्रियैरपि ।
 योगिनः कर्म कुर्वन्ति सङ्गं त्यक्त्वा ऽऽत्मशुद्धये ॥
 युक्तः कर्मफलं त्यक्त्वा शान्तिमाप्नोति नैष्ठिकीम् ।
 अयुक्तः कामकारेण फले सक्तो निबध्यते ॥¹

“ He who acteth placing all actions in Brahman, abandoning attachment, is unaffected by sin, as a lotus leaf by the waters.

“ Yogin-s having abandoned attachment, perform action only by the body, by the mind, by the reason, and even by the senses, for the purification of the self.

“ The harmonised man, having abandoned the fruit of action, attaineth to the eternal peace ; the non-harmonised one, impelled by desire, attached to fruit, is bound.”

विद्याविनयसंपन्ने ब्राह्मणे गवि हस्तनि ।
 शुनि चैव श्वपाके च पण्डिताः समदर्शिनः ॥
 इहैव तैर्जितः सगौ येषां साम्ये स्थितं मनः ।
 निदोषं हि समं ब्रह्म तस्माद् ब्रह्मणि ते स्थिताः ॥
 न प्रहृष्येत्प्रियं प्राप्य नोद्विजेत्प्राप्य चाप्रियम् ।
 स्थिरबुद्धिरसंमूढो ब्रह्मविद् ब्रह्मणि स्थितः ॥

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, v, 10-12.

बाह्यस्पर्शेष्वसक्तात्मा विन्दत्यात्मनि यत्सुखम् ।

स ब्रह्मयोगयुक्तात्मा सुखमक्षय्यमश्नुते ॥¹

“Sages look equally on a Brāhmaṇa adorned with learning and humility, a cow, an elephant and even a dog and an outcaste.

“Even here on earth they have conquered the universe whose mind remains balanced. Brahman is incorruptible and balanced ; therefore they are established in Brahman.

“One should neither rejoice in obtaining what is pleasant, nor sorrow in obtaining what is unpleasant ; with Reason firm, unperplexed, the Brahman-knower (is) established in Brahman.

“He whose self is unattached to external contacts, and findeth joy in the SELF, having the self harmonised with Brahman by yoga, enjoyeth happiness exempt from decay.”

यो ऽन्तःसुखो ऽन्तरारामस्तथा ऽन्तर्ज्योतिरेव यः ।

स योगी ब्रह्मनिर्वाणं ब्रह्मभूतो ऽधिगच्छति ॥

लभन्ते ब्रह्मनिर्वाणमृषयः क्षीणकल्मषाः ।

छिन्नद्वैवा यतात्मानः सर्वभूतहिते रताः ॥

कामक्रोधवियुक्तानां यतीनां यतचेतसाम् ।

अभितो ब्रह्मनिर्वाणं वर्तते विदितात्मनाम् ॥²

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, v, 18-21.

² *Ibid.*, v, 24-26.

“ He who is happy within, who rejoiceth within and who is illuminated within, that yogin, becoming Brahman, goeth to the Nirvāṇa of Brahman.

“ Ṛṣi-s, their sins destroyed, their duality removed, their selves controlled, intent upon the welfare of all beings, obtain the Nirvāṇa of Brahman.

“ The Nirvāṇa of Brahman lies near to those who know themselves, who are disjoined from desire and passion, subdued ascetics, of controlled mind.”

CHAPTER IV

KARMA

KARMA is a Samskṛt word which means action, but it is generally used to mean a certain definite connection between what is being done now and what will happen in the future. Things do not happen by accident, by chance, in a disorderly way. They happen in regular succession; they follow each other in a regular order.

If a seed is planted in the ground, it sends up a little stem, and leaves grow on the stem and the flowers come, and then fruits, and in the fruits are seeds again. And one of these seeds planted will produce a stem, and leaves, and flowers and fruits and seeds. The same sort of seed produces the same kind of plants. Rice produces rice-plants; barley produces barley; wheat produces wheat; thistle produces thistle; cactus produces cactus. If a man sows thistles, he must not expect a crop of sweet grapes; if he plants prickly cactus, he must not expect to gather juicy apples. This is karma, and a man, knowing it, sows the seed of the thing he wants to reap. This is the first thing to remember.

Now an action is not quite so simple a thing as it looks. If I ask a person, "Why do you walk into the town?" he will say: "*I wanted* a pair of shoes, and *I thought* I could get them there;" or: "*I wanted* to see a friend and *I thought* he was in the town;" and so on, in many ways, but always: "*I wanted* and *I thought* therefore *I acted*." These three are always found together.

Now a *want* is what is called a desire; we *desire* to get something—that is the first stage; then we *think* how to get it—that is the second stage; then we *act* so as to get it—that is the third stage. This is the regular order: every action has a thought behind it and every thought has a desire behind it.

These three things—action, thought, desire—are the three threads that are twisted into the cord of karma. Our actions make the people round us happy or unhappy; if we make them happy, we have sown happiness like a seed, and it grows up into happiness for ourselves; if we make them unhappy, we have sown unhappiness like a seed, and it grows up into unhappiness for ourselves. If we do cruel things, we sow cruelty like a seed, and it grows up into cruelty to ourselves. If we do kind things, we sow kindness like a seed, and it grows up into kindness to ourselves. Whatever we sow by our actions comes back to us. This is karma.

But action has thought behind it. Now thought makes what is called our character, the nature and kind of mind that we have. As we think about a thing a great deal, our mind becomes like that thing. If we think kindly, we become kind ; if we think cruelly, we become cruel ; if we think deceitfully, we become deceitful ; if we think honestly, we become honest. In this way our character is made by our thoughts, and when we are born again, we shall be born with the character that is being made by our thoughts now. As we act according to our nature, or character—as a kind person acts kindly, or a cruel person acts cruelly—it is easy to see that actions in our next life will depend on the thoughts of our present life. This is karma.

But thought has desire behind it. Now desire brings us the object we wish for. As a magnet attracts soft iron, so does desire attract objects. If we desire money, we shall have the opportunity of becoming rich in another life. If we desire learning, we shall have the opportunity of becoming learned in another life. If we desire love, we shall have the opportunity of becoming loved. If we desire power, we shall have the opportunity of becoming powerful. This is Karma.

The student should think over this again and again till he thoroughly understands it. Only when he understands this, can he go on to the

more difficult problems of karma. Karma may be summed up in a sentence: A man reaps as he sows.

But the student may ask: "If my actions now are the outcome of my past thoughts, and if my past thoughts are the outcome of my past desires, am I not helplessly bound? I must act as I have thought. I must think as I have desired." That is true, but to a certain extent only; for we are changing constantly as we gain new experiences, and the Jīva thus gains more knowledge, and by the help of that changes his desires. In other words while we have *actually* desired, thought and acted in a certain way in the past, the *possibility* of desiring, of thinking *otherwise* has also been present throughout that past; and this possibility may be turned, at any time, into actuality, as soon as we realise, by means of new experiences, the evil consequences of acting as we have actually done in the past.

Suppose a man finds that he has acted cruelly; he learns that his cruel action was caused by his cruel thoughts in the past, and that those cruel thoughts grew out of desire to get an object which could only be obtained by cruelty. He sees that his cruel actions make people miserable, that these people hate and fear him, and thus make him lonely and unhappy. He thinks over all this, and he

resolves to change, but the pressure of his past thoughts and desires is very difficult to resist. He goes to the root of the trouble—the desire for the things that he cannot get without cruelty, and he—who is the Jīva—says to himself: “I will not let myself desire those things, and whenever I begin to wish for them I will remember that the desire breeds misery.” He uses thought to check desire, instead of letting desire control thought. Then instead of desires carrying him away, as if they were runaway horses, he gradually uses thought as a bridle, and keeps his desires in check. He will only allow them to run after objects that bring happiness when they are obtained.

Young Jīva-s let their desires run away with them, and so bring much unhappiness on themselves; older Jīva-s grow wiser, and when the desire runs out to an object the possession of which would, as he has found in the past, cause unhappiness, he remembers that past unhappiness, and by his thought pulls the desire back.

The student, then, who would make happiness for others and for himself, must look well after his desires, must find out by observation and study which objects in the long run bring happiness, and which bring unhappiness, and must then try, with all his strength, to desire only those things the outcome of which is happiness.

It is very important to realise that escape from the bonds of birth and death is not gained by any special mode of life, but that, as S'rī Kṛṣṇa says: "He who, established in unity, worshippeth Me, abiding in all beings, that yogin liveth in Me, whatever his mode of living."¹ Janaka, the Kṣātriya King and Tulā-dhāra, the Vaisya merchant, equally reached liberation, and that, not by fleeing to the forest, but by the absence of desire for worldly things.

Janaka was King in Mithilā over the Videha-
and, having attained to tranquillity of mind, he sang this song: "Unlimited is my wealth, and yet I have naught. If the whole of Mithilā be burned up with fire, yet for me there will be nothing lost."² And so he told Māṇḍavya, having repeated this, that whatever possessions a man might have were but a source of trouble, and that the gratification of desire, here or in heaven, could not afford the sixteenth part of the happiness which comes from the disappearance of desire. As the horns of a cow grow with the cow, so does the desire for wealth grow with its possession. Wealth should be used for the good that can be done with it, but desire is sorrow. Looking on all creatures as on himself, a wise man gains freedom from all anxiety.³ By the teaching of

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, vi, 31.

² *Mahā-bhārata*, S'ānti-parvan, clxxiii.

³ *Ibid.*, cccxxvii.

the sage Yājñā-vaikya, King Janaka attained liberation, for it "enabled him to attain to that Brahman which is auspicious and immortal, and which transcends all sorrow."¹ And having thus learned, he became in his turn a teacher, to whom even Vyāsa sent his son, S'uka, to learn the religion of emancipation.²

Jājali made great tapas, and became filled with pride; and one day he thought within himself: "who in this wide sea and spacious earth is like to me?" Then cried a voice: "Say not such words. Even Tulā-dhāra, busy in buying and selling, should not thus speak, and to him thou art not equal." Then Jājali wondered much that a mere merchant should be put above himself, a Brāhmaṇa and an ascetic, and he set forth to find Tulā-dhāra, and thus solve the riddle. Vexing himself, he reached the city of Vārāṇasī, and there found Tulā-dhāra, a mere shopkeeper, selling, to whomsoever came, all kinds of goods. Tulā-dhāra stood up, greeting the Brāhmaṇa as was fitting and to him Tulā-dhāra related the story of the great penance that had inflated him with pride: "Angry, thou hast come to me, O Brāhmaṇa; what service can I render thee?" Much amazed was Jājali at such knowledge of his

¹ See the great discourse of Yājñā-vaikya to King Janaka; *Mahābhārata*, Śānti-parvan, cccxi—cccix.

² *Ibid.*, cccxxvi—cccxxviii.

past shown by this humble trader, and eagerly he pressed for explanation. Then Tulā-dhāra spoke to him of the ancient morality known to all—though practised by so few—of living in a way which inflicted harm on none, or when harm could not be totally avoided, a minimum of such harm; he himself asked no loan from any, nor with any quarrelled; attraction and aversion he had conquered; equal his look on all, without praising or blaming any; when a man is fearless and is feared by none, when he neither likes nor dislikes, when he does no wrong to any, then he reaches Brahman. Very beautifully did Tulā-dhāra discourse of the injuries inflicted on animals and on men by cruelty, of the nature of sacrifice, and of true pilgrimage, showing how liberation might be gained by harmlessness.¹

काममय एवायं पुरुष इति स यथाकामो भवति तत्क्रतुर्भवति
यत्क्रतुर्भवति तत्कर्म कुरुते यत्कर्म कुरुते तदभिसंपद्यते ॥²

“Man verily is desire-formed; as is his desire so is his thought; as (his) thought is, so he does action; as he does action, so he attains.”

तदेव सक्तः सह कर्मणैति लिङ्गं मनो यत्र निषक्तमस्य ॥³

“So indeed the desirer goes by work to the object in which his mind is immersed.”

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, cclxi—

² *Bṛhad-āraṇyakoṣ.*, IV, iv, 5.

³ *Ibid.*, 6.

अथ खलु क्रतुमयः पुरुषो यथाक्रतुरस्मिँल्लोके पुरुषो भवति
तथेतः प्रेत्य भवति ।¹

“Now verily man is thought-formed ; as man in this world thinks, so, having gone away hence, he becomes.”

न मां कर्माणि लिम्पन्ति न मे कर्मफले स्पृहा ।
इति मां यो ऽभिजानाति कर्मभिर्न स बध्यते ॥
एवं ज्ञात्वा कृतं कर्म पूर्वैरपि मुमुक्षुभिः ।
कुरु कर्मैव तस्मात्त्वं पूर्वैः पूर्वतरं कृतम् ॥²

“Nor do actions affect Me, nor is the fruit of action desired by Me. He who thus knoweth Me is not bound by actions.”

“Having thus known, our forefathers, ever seeking liberation, performed action ; therefore do thou also perform action, as did our forefathers in the olden time.”

यस्य सर्वे समारम्भाः कामसंकल्पवर्जिताः ।
ज्ञानाग्निदग्धकर्माणं तमाहुः पण्डितं बुधाः ॥
त्यक्त्वा कर्मफलासङ्गं नित्यतृप्तो निराश्रयः ।
कर्मण्यभिप्रवृत्तो ऽपि नैव किञ्चित्करोति सः ॥
निराशीर्यतचित्तात्मा त्यक्तसर्वपरिग्रहः ।
शारीरं केवलं कर्म कुर्वन् नाप्नोति किल्बिषम् ॥

¹ *Chāndo-gyop.*, III, xiv, 1,

² *Bhagavad-gītā*, iv, 14, 15.

यदच्छालाभसंतुष्टो द्वंद्वातीतो विमत्सरः ।
 समः सिद्धावसिद्धौ च कृत्वा ऽपि न निबध्यते ॥
 गतसङ्गस्य मुक्तस्य ज्ञानावस्थितचेतसः ।
 यज्ञायाचरतः कर्म समग्रं प्रविलीयते ॥ ¹

“ Whose works are all free from the moulding of desire, whose actions are burned up by the fire of wisdom, him the wise have called a Sage.

“ Having abandoned attachment to the fruit of action, always content, nowhere seeking refuge, he is not doing anything, although doing actions.

“ Hoping for naught, his mind and self controlled, having abandoned all greed, performing action by the body alone, he doth not commit sin.

“ Content with whatsoever he obtaineth without effort, free from the pairs of opposites, without envy, balanced in success and failure, though acting he is not bound.

“ Of one with attachment dead, harmonious, with his thoughts established in wisdom, his works sacrifices, all action melts away.”

यदा सर्वे प्रमुच्यन्ते कामा ये ऽस्य हृदि स्थिताः ।

अथ मर्त्यो ऽमृतो भवत्यत्र ब्रह्म समश्नुते ॥ ²

“ When all the desires hidden in the heart are loosed, then the mortal becomes immortal, then he here enjoyeth Brahman.”

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, iv, 19-23.

² *Koṭhoph.*, II, vi, 14.

आत्मानं रथिनं विद्धि शरीरं रथमेव तु ।
 बुद्धिं तु सारथिं विद्धि मनः प्रग्रहमेव च ॥
 इन्द्रियाणि हयानाहुर्विषयांस्तेषु गोचरान् ।
 आत्मेन्द्रियमनोयुक्तं भोक्तेत्याहुर्मनीषिणः ॥
 यस्त्वविज्ञानवान्भवत्ययुक्तेन मनसा सदा ।
 तस्येन्द्रियाण्यवश्यानि दुष्टाश्वा इव सारथेः ॥
 यस्तु विज्ञानवान्भवति युक्तेन मनसा सदा ।
 तस्येन्द्रियाणि वश्यानि सदश्वा इव सारथेः ॥
 यस्त्वविज्ञानवान्भवत्यमनस्कः सदा ऽशुचिः ।
 न स तत्पदमाप्नोति संसारं चाधिगच्छति ॥ ¹

“Know the Self, the chariot-owner, the body, the chariot; know Reason, the charioteer, and the mind as the reins; they call the senses, the horses, the sense-objects, their province. The Self, joined to the senses and mind, (is) the enjoyer; thus say the wise. Whoever is ignorant, always with mind loose, his senses (are) uncontrolled, like bad horses of the charioteer. Whoever is wise, always with mind tightened, his senses (are) controlled, like good horses of the charioteer. Whoever is indeed ignorant, thoughtless, always impure, he does not obtain that goal (but) comes again into Samsāra.”

¹ *Kaṭhop.*, I, iii, 3-7.

CHAPTER V

SACRIFICE

THE idea of "offering sacrifices" is very familiar in India, but a student needs to understand the principle which underlies all sacrifices, so that he may realise that every one should sacrifice *himself* to the good of others, and that all sacrifice of other things are meant, to teach a man how he ought, at last, to sacrifice himself.

The first thing to grasp is that creation is sacrifice. Īsvara confines Himself, limits Himself, in matter in order that a universe may be made manifest. S'ruti and Smṛti alike proclaim this truth, as in the Puruṣa-sūkta of the *Ṛg-veda* or as in the allusion by S'rī Kṛṣṇa to the formal sacrifice that causes the birth of beings.¹ Immersion in matter is, in spiritual language, called "death," and Īsvara thus sacrificed Himself in order that He might bring into separate being portions of Himself, the Jīva-s who might develop all His powers in matter in an infinite variety of forms. This is the primary

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, viii, 3.

sacrifice, and on this is based the Law. This also gives us the meaning of sacrifice : it is the pouring out of life for the benefit of others.

The Law of Sacrifice is the Law of Life of all Jīva-s. In the earlier stages of their growth they are forcibly sacrificed, and so progress involuntarily, without their own consent or even knowledge, their forms being violently wrenched away from them, and they propelled into new ones, a little more developed. Thus the Jīva-s of the mineral kingdom are prepared to pass on into the vegetable, by the breaking up of their mineral bodies for the support of plants. The Jīva-s of the vegetable kingdom are prepared to pass on into the animals, by the breaking up of their vegetable bodies for the support of animal life. The Jīva-s of the animal kingdom are prepared to pass on into the human, by the breaking up of their bodies for the support of other animals, of savages, and of certain types of men. And even the Jīva-s of the human kingdom are prepared to rise into higher races by breaking up of their human bodies for the support of other human lives in cannibalism, war, etc.

In all these cases the bodies are sacrificed for the benefit of others, without the assent of the embodied consciousness. Only after untold ages does the Jīva recognise, in the body, the universality of the law, and begin to sacrifice his own upādhi-s

deliberately, for the good of those around him. This is called self-sacrifice, and is the showing forth of the divinity of the Jīva, the proof that he is of the nature of Īsvara.

A wonderful story of uttermost self-sacrifice is told in the *Mahā-bhārata*.

Indra, the King of the Deva-s, was sore beset by the Asura Vṛttra, born of the wrath of a Ṛṣi, whom Indra had offended by an unrighteous act. Vṛttra heading the Daitya-s defeated Indra and his armies in battle, drove him away from his capital, Amarāvati and took away his sovereignty. Long the Deva-s wandered with their King in exile, and repeatedly they made endeavour to regain their capital, but were vanquished again and again. Finally they learnt that the righteous wrath of a Ṛṣi could not be allayed, except by the voluntary self-sacrifice and pity of another Ṛṣi; and that Vṛttra could be slain by no other weapon than the thunderbolt made with the self-given bones of a holy one. And they went eagerly to the Ṛṣi Dadhīci and told their woeful tale to him. And he was filled with a great pity and said: "I give to you my body willingly to make what use of it you like." And when their artificer Visva-karman shrank from laying a rude and painful hand upon that shining body of purity and tapas, Dadhīci smiled and said: "Cover this body up

with salt ; bring here a herd of cows ; they shall lick off the salt and flesh together ; and ye shall take the bones which only ye require ; and so naught of this body shall be wasted." And this was done and Vṛttra fell before the might born of that wondrous sacrifice.¹

The Jīva is led up to this point by the teachings of the Ṛṣi-s, who bid him make sacrifices of his possessions for a good that he does not receive immediately : they show him that when a man sacrifices to others, his gifts return to him increased in the future. A man is to sacrifice some of his goods, which may be looked on as outlying pieces of himself, and he is promised that this act of self-denial shall bring him increased possessions. Next he was taught to make similar sacrifices and to deny himself present enjoyments, in order that he might lay up for himself increased happiness on the other side of death in Svarga. Thus the practice of sacrificing was made habitual, and man, by sacrificing his possessions in the hope of reward, prepared to learn that it was his duty to sacrifice himself in the service of others, and to find in the joy of that service his reward.

Another lesson taught in these sacrifices was the relation man bears to all the beings round him ; that he is not a solitary, isolated life, but that all

¹ *Loc. cit.*, Vana-parvan, c.

lives are inter-dependent, and can only prosper permanently as they recognise this inter-dependence. The Ṛṣi-s taught him to sacrifice daily to the Deva-s, to Ṛṣi-s, to ancestors, to men and animals, and showed him that as all these made sacrifices to enrich his life, he had incurred to them a debt, a duty, which he must pay by sacrifice. As he lives *on* others, he must, in common honesty, live *for* others. Sacrifice is right, a thing that ought to be done, that is owed.

Finally, as the Jīva recognises his parentage, his identity in nature with Īśvara, sacrifice becomes happiness, a delight, and the pouring out of life for others is felt as a joyous exercise of innate divine powers. Instead of seeing how much he can take and how little he can give, he tries to see how little he can take and how much he can give. He begins to look very carefully into what he takes for the support of his own upādhi-s, and seeks to reduce to the lowest point the suffering inflicted by the breaking up of lower forms for his support. He abandons the foods and the amusements which inflict pain on sentient beings and tries to become "the friend of all creatures." He realises that while the preying of animals on animals, of men on men, and the slaughter of animals by men for food or sport, are necessary at certain stages of evolution for the development of needed faculties and powers, men

should gradually evolve from these, and cultivate the faculties of gentleness, sympathy and tenderness, regarding the weaker as younger Selves to be helped, instead of as victims to be immolated.

As a man lives in such thoughts of his non-separateness from younger Selves, he begins to feel more really his non-separateness from elder Selves and from the Universal Parent, Īsvara. Slowly he realises that his true function is to live for others, as Īsvara lives for all, and that his true happiness lies in becoming a channel in which the life of Īsvara is flowing, a willing instrument to do the will of Īsvara. Then every action becomes a sacrifice to Īsvara, and actions no longer bind him. Thus the law of sacrifice becomes also the law of liberation.

सहयज्ञाः प्रजाः सृष्ट्वा पुरोवाच प्रजापतिः ।
 अनेन प्रसविष्यध्वमेष वो ऽस्त्विष्टकामधुक् ॥
 देवान्भावयतानेन ते देवा भावयन्तु वः ।
 परस्परं भावयन्तः श्रेयः परमवाप्स्यथ ॥
 इष्टान्भोगान्हि वो देवा दास्यन्ते यज्ञभाविताः ।
 तैर्दत्तानप्रदायैभ्यो यो भुङ्क्ते स्तेन एव सः ॥
 यज्ञशिष्टाशिनः सन्तो मुच्यन्ते सर्वकिल्बिषैः ।
 भुञ्जते ते त्वघं पापा ये पचन्त्यात्मकारणात् ॥
 अन्नाद्भवन्ति भूतानि पर्जन्यादन्नसंभवः ।
 यज्ञाद्भवति पर्जन्यो यज्ञः कर्मसमुद्भवः ॥

कर्म ब्रह्मोद्भवं विद्धि ब्रह्माक्षरसमुद्भवम् ।

तस्मात्सर्वगतं ब्रह्म नित्यं यज्ञे प्रतिष्ठितम् ॥¹

“ Having in ancient times emanated mankind together with sacrifice, Prajā-pati declared : ‘ By this shall ye propagate ; be this to you the Kāma-duh.

“ With this nourish ye the Deva-s, and may the Deva-s nourish you ; nourishing one another ye shall reap the supremest good.

“ For, nourished by sacrifice, the Deva-s, shall bestow on you the enjoyments you desire. A thief verily is he who enjoyeth what is given by them without returning them aught.

“ The righteous, who eat the remains of the sacrifice, are freed from all sins ; but the impious, who dress food for their own sakes, they verily eat sin.

“ From food creatures come forth ; from rain is the production of food ; rain proceedeth from sacrifice ; sacrifice ariseth out of action.

“ Know thou from Brahman (the Veda) action groweth, and Brahman (the Veda) from the Imperishable, cometh. Therefore Brahman, the all permeating, is ever present in sacrifice.’ ”

काङ्क्षन्तः कर्मणां सिद्धिं यजन्त इह देवताः ।

क्षिप्रं हि मानुषे लोके सिद्धिर्भवति कर्मजा ॥²

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, iii, 10-15.

² *Bhagavad-gītā*, iv, 12.

“They who long after success in action on earth sacrifice to the Deva-s ; for in brief space, verily, in this world of men, success is born of action.”

आ वो राजानावध्वरे ववृत्यां हव्येभिरिन्द्रावरुणा नमोभिः ।
अस्मे इन्द्रावरुणा विश्ववारं रयिं धत्तं वसुमन्तं पुरुक्षुम् ॥
इयमिन्द्रं वरुणमष्टमे गीः प्रावत्तोके तनये तूतुजाना ।¹

“O Kings, Indra, Varuṇa, to this our sacrifice be ye turned by offerings and homage, . . .

“O Indra, Varuṇa, plenteous wealth and food and blessing give us. . . .

“This my song may it reach Indra, Varuṇa, and by its force bring sons and offspring.”

एतेषु यश्चरते भ्राजमानेषु यथाकालं चाहुतयो ह्याददायन् ।
तं नयन्त्येताः सूर्यस्य रश्मयो यत्र देवानां पतिरेको ऽधिवासः ॥
एह्येहीति तमाहुतयः सुवर्चसः
सूर्यस्य रश्मिभिर्यजमानं वहन्ति ।
प्रियां वाचमभिवदन्त्यो ऽर्चयन्त्य
एष वः पुण्यः सुकृतो ब्रह्मलोकः ॥²

“Whoever works (sacrifices), pouring libations into the shining of these [the seven flames previously mentioned] at the proper time, him these sun-rays lead where dwells the one Lord of the Deva-s.

¹ *Rg-veda*, VII, lxxxiv, 1, 4, 5.

² *Muṇḍakop.*, I, ii, 5, 6.

Saying to him 'Come, come,' these resplendent libations carry the sacrificer by the sun-rays, worshipping him and saying the sweet words: 'This is your pure well-deserved Brahman-world.' "

यज्ञशिष्टामृतभुजो यान्ति ब्रह्म सनातनम् ।

नायं लोको ऽस्त्ययज्ञस्य कुतो ऽन्यः कुरुसत्तम ॥¹

"The eaters of the life-giving remains of sacrifice go to the eternal Brahman. This world is not for the non-sacrificer, much less the other, O best of the Kuru-s."

गतसङ्गस्य मुक्तस्य ज्ञानावस्थितचेतसः ।

यज्ञायाचरतः कर्म समग्रं प्रविलीयते ॥²

"From one with attachment dead, harmonious, with his thoughts established in wisdom, his works sacrifices, all Karma melts away."

यत्करोषि यदश्नासि यञ्जुहोषि ददासि यत् ।

यत्तपस्यसि कौन्तेय तत्कुरुष्व मदर्पणम् ॥

शुभाशुभफलैरेवं मोक्ष्यसे कर्मबन्धनैः ।³

"Whatsoever thou doest, whatsoever thou eatest, whatsoever thou offerest, whatsoever thou givest,

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, iv, 31.

² *Ibid.*, 23.

³ *Ibid.*, ix, 27, 28.

whatsoever thou doest of austerity, O Kaunteya, do thou that as an offering unto Me.

“Thus shalt thou be liberated from the bonds of action, (yielding) good and evil fruits.”

CHAPTER VI

THE WORLDS—VISIBLE AND INVISIBLE

WE all know one world, the world around us, which we can see, and hear, and touch, and taste, and smell. Science tells us of many parts of this world, which our senses are not keen enough to perceive, things too small for our eyes to see, too subtle to affect any of our senses. These parts of our world, which we cannot perceive but about which science tells us, are still physical, although invisible to us ; they are parts of our world. Physical matter includes solids, liquids, gases, and ethers, all made up of atoms of the same kind.

But we have heard of other worlds, which are invisible and are not a part of this world, the worlds into which people go when they pass away from this earth by death. We read of the Tri-lokī, the three worlds, and every one should know something about these, for in these three worlds the Jīva is bound to the wheel of births and deaths, and in these his evolution proceeds. These three worlds are made at the beginning of immense period called a Day

of Brahmā, and perish at its ending. Four other great loka-s, or worlds, complete the Brahmāṇḍa, but they last on through the life of Brahmā. We need not deal with them here. There are also some sub-divisions within the great loka-s, to which the same name of loka is given, such as, Preta-loka and Pitr-loka in Bhuvar-loka, and Indra-loka and Sūrya-loka in Svarga-loka.

The three great loka-s with which we are concerned, the Tri-lokī, are: Bhūr-loka, the physical world, or the earth; Bhuvar-loka, the world of "becoming"—intermediate between the earth and Svarga; Svarga-loka, the heaven world. Of these three, Bhūr-loka is partly visible and partly invisible to us; Bhuvar-loka and Svarga-loka are invisible. In Bhūr-loka the Pṛthvī-tattva is the basis of all forms: it exists in seven modifications—solid, liquid, gaseous, radiant, etheric, super-etheric and atomic. These latter four are spoken as "the ethers." In Bhuvar-loka seven similar modifications exist, but the basis is the Ap-tattva. In Svarga-loka there are also seven similar modifications, but the basis is the Agni-tattva.

The Jīva has three sheaths corresponding to these worlds—the Anna-maya-kośa, the Prāṇa-maya-kośa, the Mano-māya-kośa. The Anna-maya-kośa, or food-sheath—so called because it is built up out of the food we eat—corresponds with the visible part of

the earth and is composed of solids, liquids and gases. The *Prāṇa-maya-kosa* or *Prāṇa-sheath*, corresponds with the invisible part of our earth and is composed of ethers. *Prāṇa* is the life-energy, and includes all the forces that science calls magnetic and electrical, but is much more than these. Both these sheaths are connected with *Bhūr-loka*.

The *Mano-maya-kosa*, mind-sheath, has two parts; the denser part, in which the passions have their seat, is connected with *Bhuvā-loka*; the finer part, in which play the emotions and thought, is connected with *Svarga-loka*.

Other names are used for these sheaths, according to the object for which the classification is made, but the student need not become confused by these, for as he advances, he will find that his increased knowledge makes them quite intelligible. We will only notice three names very commonly used.

The *sthūla-sarīra*, or solid body, is the same as the *Anna-maya-kosa*, made of solids, liquids and gases. The *Sūkṣma-sarīra*, or subtle body, includes the *Prāṇa-maya-kosa* and the *Mano-maya-kosa*; in addition to these, it includes another *kosa*, the *Vijñāna-maya-kosa*, the knowledge-sheath, which connects the *Jīva* with *mahar-loka*, a *loka* beyond the *Tri-lokī* in which his pilgrimage is carried on, one which is not destroyed, though it is rendered

uninhabitable, at the close of the Day of Brahmā. This part of the Sūkṣma-sarīra, the knowledge-sheath, is relatively permanent, and lasts through the series of births and deaths.

A table may make these two classifications, and their relation to the loka-s, clear :

S'ARĪRA	LOKA	KOŚA
Sthūla-	Bhūr-	Anna-maya-
Sūkṣma-	Bhūr-	Prāṇa-maya-
Sūkṣma-	Bhuvar-	Mano-maya-
Sūkṣma-	Svarga-	Mano-maya-

[These perish at or after death and are renewed at re-birth.]

Sūkṣma-	Mahar-	Vijñāna-maya-
---------	--------	---------------

[This does not perish at or after death, so is not renewed at re-birth.]

The Sthūla-sarīra contains the *organs* of action, the hands, feet and those of speech, generation and excretion, often called the Karmendriya-s; but the true Karmendriya-s, *the centres which direct and control the organs*, are in the Sūkṣma-sarīra. Thus joy, or grief, or any strong emotion, affects the centres, and through them, the organs; the hands twitch, the feet tap, speech is impeded in irritation, and so on. The Jñānendriya-s have also their centres in the Sūkṣma-sarīra, while their organs—eyes, ears, tongue, nose and skin—are in the Sthūla-sarīra.

Now let us see what happens at death. First, the Sūkṣma-sarīra is separated from the Sthūla-sarīra,

the Jīva drawing it away by means of the Prāṇa-maya-kosa. This leaves the Sthūla-sarīra a mass of "lifeless" matter; that is, of matter from which the life that held it together is withdrawn; there is plenty of life left in the cells of the body, and they begin to break away from each other, but the ruling life is gone. The Jīva remains in his Sūkṣma-sarīra. Very quickly he shakes off his Prāṇa-maya-kosa, and has then the denser part of the Mano-maya-kosa as his outermost garment. He is then called a Preta, and is an inhabitant of Preta-loka. If he has been a very good man on earth, he dreams away happily while in this condition; but if he has been a bad man, he suffers while a Preta, craving for the earthly pleasures which he is no longer able to obtain. After a shorter or longer time—according to the strength of these cravings and the consequent length of time needed for their exhaustion—the densest part of the Mano-maya-kosa falls away, and he goes as a Pitṛ into Pitṛ-loka. Having spent there sufficient time to purify the Mano-maya-kosa from all elements unfit for Svarga, the Jīva in the purified Mano-maya-kosa goes on into Svarga, and enjoys there the fruit he has stored up.

When this is exhausted, the time has come for his return to earth, and the purified Mano-maya-kosa dissolves away, leaving the Jīva in the

Vijñāna-maya-kosa. He quickly puts forth his power to form new vehicles, and creates a new Mano-maya-kosa for his coming life in the lower worlds. The Deva-s build for him a Prāṇa-maya-kosa and an Anna-maya-kosa, according to his karma, and he is again born into Bhūr-loka.

These are the recurring stages of the Jīva's pilgrimage: life in the visible world, death, life in the invisible worlds, re-birth. This is repeated time after time, time after time. At last, the Jīva grows weary of these three worlds, and longs for higher, subtler experiences and more expanded life; he turns away from all these worlds can offer him, and finds delight in meditation, in worship, in the compassionate helping of the weaker; he no longer uses his vehicles to gain pleasure for himself, but only to do service to others, and, so used, they can no longer imprison him. He dwells in the higher loka-s, guiding his lower vehicles as his instruments in the lower worlds, and becomes a co-worker with Īsvara, either retaining his vehicles for service or throwing them away and entering into Brahman.

अथ त्रयो वाव लोका मनुष्यलोकः पितृलोको देवलोक इति ।¹

"Now verily there are three worlds—the world of men, the world of the Pitṛ-s, the world of the Deva-s."

¹ *Bṛhad-aranyakop.*, I, v, 16.

जातस्य हि ध्रुवो मृत्युर्ध्रुवं जन्म मृतस्य च ।
तस्मादपरिहार्यं ऽर्थे न त्वं शोचितुमर्हसि ॥
अव्यक्तादीनि भूतानि व्यक्तमध्यानि भारत ।
अव्यक्तनिधनान्येव तत्र का परिदेवना ॥¹

“ For certain is death for the born, and certain is birth for the dead ; therefore over the inevitable thou shouldst not grieve.

“ Beings are unmanifest in their origin, manifest in their midmost state, O Bhārata, unmanifest in their dissolution ; what room then for lamentation ? ”

सहस्रयुगपर्यन्तमहर्षद् ब्रह्मणो विदुः ।
रात्रिं युगसहस्रान्तां ते ऽहोरात्रविदो जनाः ॥
अव्यक्ताद्व्यक्तयः सर्वाः प्रभवन्त्यहरागमे ।
रात्र्यागमे प्रलीयन्ते तत्रैवाव्यक्तसंज्ञके ॥²

“ The people who know the Day of Brahmā, a thousand Yuga-s in duration, and the Night, a thousand Yuga-s in ending, they know day and night.

“ From the unmanifested all the manifested stream forth at the coming of Day ; at the coming of Night they dissolve, even in that called the unmanifested.”

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, ii, 27, 28.

² *Ibid.*, viii, 17, 18.

त्रैविद्या मां सोमपाः पूतपापा यज्ञैरिष्ट्वा स्वर्गतिं प्रार्थयन्ते ।
 ते पुण्यमासाद्य सुरेन्द्रलोकमश्नन्ति दिव्यान्दिवि देवभोगान् ॥
 ते तं भुक्त्वा स्वर्गलोकं विशालं क्षीणे पुण्ये मर्त्यलोकं विशन्ति ।
 एवं त्रयीधर्ममनुप्रपन्ना गतागतं कामकामा लभन्ते ॥¹

“The knowers of the three (Veda-s), the Soma-drinkers, the purified from sin, worshipping Me with sacrifice, pray of Me the way to Svarga; they, ascending to the holy world of the Devendra, enjoy in heaven the divine feast of the Deva-s.

“Having enjoyed the spacious Svarga-world, their holiness withered, they come back to this world of death. Following the virtues enjoined by the three (Veda-s), desiring desires, they undergo this passage to and fro.”

बहूनां जन्मनामन्ते ज्ञानवान्मां प्रपद्यते ।

वासुदेवः सर्वमिति स महाऽऽत्मा सुदुर्लभः ॥²

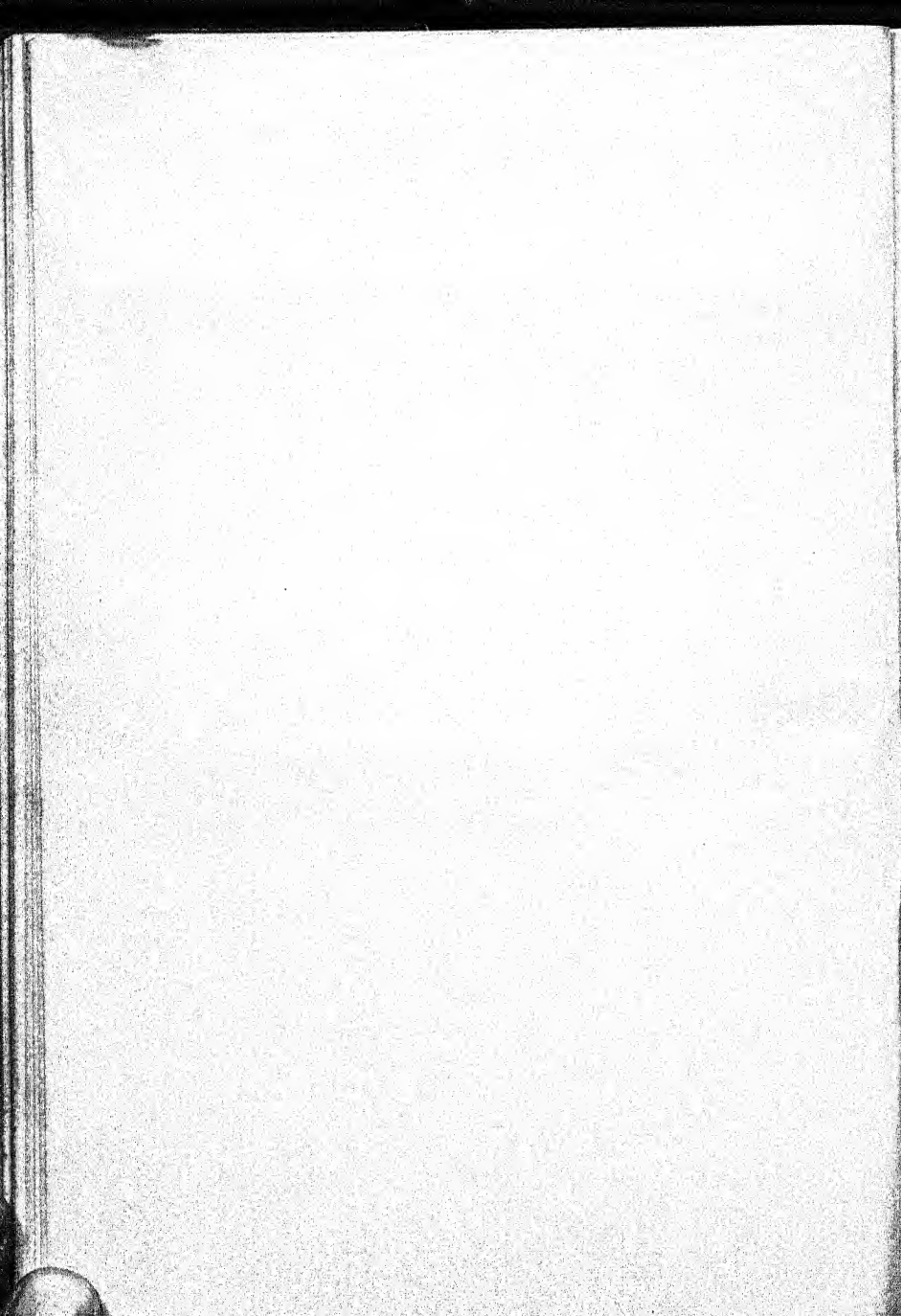
“At the end of many births the man full of wisdom cometh unto me: ‘Vāsu-deva is all,’ saith he, the Mahātman, very difficult to find.”

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, ix, 20, 21.

² *Ibid.*, vii, 19.

PART II

GENERAL HINDU RELIGIOUS
CUSTOMS AND RITES



CHAPTER I

THE SAṂSKĀRA-S

EVERY religion prescribes a number of ceremonies, or rites, to be performed by its followers. The use of the ceremonies, speaking generally, is : (1) to help the Jīva to conquer and purify his sheaths ; (2) to bring to his aid superior Intelligences, such as the Deva-s and the Ṛṣi-s ; (3) to improve the atmosphere around him and so make it easier for him to steady and concentrate his mind.

To this end are used material objects, gestures, postures and sounds, all carefully arranged to bring about the results aimed at.

The objects used are chosen for their good magnetism, and in many cases—such as particular flowers offered to a particular Deva—because they share the magnetism of the Object of meditation or of worship, and thus make a link between that Object and the worshipper. Thus a mālā, a rosary, of tulasī beads is used in the worship of S'rī Kṛṣṇa ; one of rudrākṣa in the worship of Mahā-deva.

Gestures and postures, for the most part, affect the Prāṇa-s—the sub-divisions of the life-breath that

circulate in the body ; some prevent the magnetism of the body from escaping into the surrounding atmosphere, and force its currents to move in a way suitable for calm and quiet thought.

Sounds are used for all the three purposes mentioned above. They give rise to vibrations, and as these vibrations are regular and even, they make the vibrations of the Sūkṣma-sarīra—which is very sensitive and easily affected—regular and even also. When these vibrations of the Sūkṣma-sarīra are made regular, the Jīva is much helped in steadiness of thought and devotion. Sounds of a suitable kind attract the attention of the Ṛṣi-s and Deva-s to the person uttering the sounds, and they help him. Further, suitable sounds drive away hostile Intelligences and bad magnetic influences, and so improve the surroundings of the speaker.

Sounds thus used are called Mantra-s. A mantra is a succession of sounds, a definite sequence, the sounds being arranged in a certain order ; if the sounds are changed the vibrations are changed, and the results will be changed. That is why a mantra cannot be translated. A translated mantra is like a sentence in which all the letters of the words are jumbled up, and so convey no meaning.

There is another thing to remember about mantra ; if the man who utters a mantra is not trying to lead a good life, the vibrations of the mantra will do him

harm, not good. For, as they work on his Sūkṣma-sarīra, they bring to bear on it a force antagonistic to evil desires and evil thoughts, and shake it very violently and may even wound and tear it, as his evil resolves make it vibrate in one way and the vibrations of the mantra force it into another. If his resolves are good then they work with the mantra and cause no conflict; however weak they may be, they aid and do not hinder.

Mantra-s need not be spoken aloud, and their silent repetition is, indeed, more powerful than audible recitation. They affect the subtler kinds of matter more than the denser.

Among the ceremonies in the life of a Hindu are some important ones that mark the chief stages of his life; in old days these were numerous, ten standing out as the chief, but of these ten, only some are now practised. Seven of the Samskāra-s relate to infantile life and early childhood. Of these seven, the sixth, Anna-prāśana, the first feeding with solid food, is universally observed; and the seventh, Cūḍā-karaṇa—the tonsure, and with it the piercing of the ears—is performed almost universally. Then comes the important eighth Samskāra, the Upanayana, the leading of the boy to the Guru who gives him the sacred thread, and teaches him the Gāyatrī, this initiation making him a Dvi-ja, twice-born.

The Upanayana is the beginning of the student stage of life, during which Brahma-carya, entire celibacy, is enjoined, and the duty of the lad is to study diligently. This stage is closed by the formal return home, the Samāvartana, after which he is ready to enter the second stage of life, that of the householder, the Gṛha-stha; the tenth Saṃskāra, Vivāha, marriage, marking his entry into manhood and its responsibilities. In modern India these wholesome rules have fallen into disuse, though the Upanayana- and Vivāha- saṃskāra-s are maintained as ceremonies. Marriage is incongruously thrust into the midst of the student life, and the duties of manhood and boyhood are mixed up to the injury of both. May the ancient rule be speedily revived.

एकः शब्दः सुप्रयुक्तः स्वर्गे लोके कामधुमभवति ।¹

“One sound, well-uttered, becometh as the cow of plenty in the Svarga-world.”

मन्त्रो हीनः स्वरतो वर्णतो वा मिथ्या प्रयुक्तो न तमर्थमाह ।

स वाग्वज्रो यजमानं हिनस्ति यथेन्द्रशत्रुः स्वरतो ऽपराधात् ॥²

“The mantra defective in Svara (inflection) or Varṇa (letter or colour) is uttered falsely and

¹ *Patañjali's Mahā-bhāṣya*, vi, i, 84.

² *Pāṇini-sikṣā*, 52.

declareth not the true meaning. That lightning-word slayeth the performer himself as (the word) 'Indra-satru' for fault of Svara (slew Vṛttra, the performer of the sacrifice, and the enemy of Indra, instead of slaying Indra, the enemy of Vṛttra, as intended).

वैदिकैः कर्मभिः पुण्यैर्निषेकादिर्द्विजन्मनाम् ।

कार्यः शरीरसंस्कारः पावनः प्रेत्य चेह च ॥¹

"With sacred Vaidika rites, should be performed the Saṁskāra-s of the body, namely, Niṣeka and the rest, of the twice-born, which purify here and hereafter."

चित्रकर्म यथा ऽनेकै रगैरुन्मील्यते शनैः ।

ब्राह्मण्यमपि तद्वत्स्यात्संस्कारैर्विधिपूर्वकैः ॥²

"As the outline of a picture is lighted up slowly with (the filling in of) many colours, even so is Brāhmaṇya with scriptural Saṁskāra-s."

गर्भाधानं पुंसवनं सीमन्तो जातकर्म च ।

नामक्रिया निष्क्रमो ऽन्नप्राशनं वपनक्रिया ॥

कर्णवेधो व्रतादेशो वेदारम्भक्रियाविधिः ।

केशान्तः स्नानमुद्राहो विवाहान्निपरिग्रहः ॥

त्रेताऽग्निसंग्रहश्चैव संस्काराः षोडश स्मृताः ।³

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, ii, 26.

² *Āṅgiras* quoted in *Pārāsara-gr̥hya-sūtra*, *Hari-hara-bhāṣya*, p. 260. (II, i.)

³ *Vyāsa-smṛti* quoted in *Pārāsara-gr̥hya-sūtra*, p. 269.

CHAPTER II

S'RĀDDHA

S'RĀDDHA is the name of the ceremonies performed to help the Jīva, who has put off his visible body in death, by those who remain in this world. The Jīva that has put off his visible body is called a Preta, and the part of the S'rāddha performed to help him at this stage is called the Preta-kriyā. The visible body, the Anna-maya-kośa, is carried to the burning-ground that it may be dissolved into its constituents as quickly as possible; the ashes are gathered together on the third day, and are thrown into running water, preferably into a sacred stream. When the Anna-maya-kośa is destroyed, the Prāṇa-maya-kośa rapidly disperses, and this dispersal is quickened by some of the mantra-s used at the cremation. Burning is the best way of destroying a dead body, and this destruction is important both for the departed Jīva and for those left behind; so long as it remains undissolved, the Prāṇa-maya-kośa hangs round it, in consequence of the magnetic attraction between them, and the Jīva is thus linked to the earth, which

is bad for him; on the other hand, a slowly decaying body in the ground, as in burial, sends out poisonous gases, and this is bad for those remaining behind.

The S'rāddha-s performed after the burning help in a re-arrangement of the materials of the Manomaya-kosa, partly by the magnetic influences of the objects used, and partly by the vibrations set up by the mantra-s. After a certain time, the Sapiṇḍī-karaṇa ceremony is performed, which helps the Jīva to pass from Preta-loka to Pitṛ-loka, and he is then enrolled among the Pitṛ-s, or the ancestors living in the subtler regions of Bhuvar-loka. Seven generations, one in Bhūr-loka and six in Bhuvar-loka, can affect each other. When the Jīva passes on into Svarga, he has no further need of the help furnished by S'rāddha.

देशे काले च पात्रे च श्रद्धया विधिना च यत् ।

पितृनुद्दिश्य विप्रेभ्यो दानं श्राद्धमुदाहृतम् ॥¹

“Gifts to deserving Brāhmaṇa-s for the sake of benefit to the Pitṛ-s, in the proper times and places and with faith, are known as S'rāddha.”

¹ *Brahmaṇḍa-purāṇa*.

कुर्यादहरहः श्राद्धमन्नाद्येनोदकेन च ।
 पयोमूलफलैर्वा ऽपि पितृभ्यः प्रीतिमावहन् ॥¹

“S'rāddha should be offered to the Pitṛ-s, day by day, with corn and water, or even roots and fruits and water, bringing them satisfaction.”

पञ्चभ्य एव मात्राभ्यः प्रेत्य दुष्कृतिनां नृणाम् ।
 शरीरं यातनार्थीयमन्यदुत्पद्यते ध्रुवम् ॥
 तेनानुभूय ता यामीः शरीरेणैह यातनाः ।
 तास्वेव भूतमात्रासु प्रलीयन्ते विभागशः ॥
 यद्याचरति धर्मं स प्रायशो ऽधर्ममल्पशः ।
 तैरेव चावृतो भूतैः स्वर्गे सुखमुपाश्नुते ॥²

“Out of the five elements a (subtler but) firm body is born (as such) for sinful Jīva-s (after death), that they may suffer punishment therein.

“After the suffering of the punishments awarded by Yama, in that body (the body) dissolves again into the elements.

“If (the Jīva) has done more Dharma and little A-dharma, he goes on to Svarga and enjoys happiness there enclosed in (another body composed of) the same elements.”

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, iii, 82.

² *Ibid.*, xii, 16, 17, 20,

चितामोक्षप्रभृति च प्रेतत्वमुपजायते ।¹

“After the cremation is completed (the Jīva) becomes a Preta.”

वर्षं यावत्खगश्रेष्ठ मार्गे गच्छति मानवः ।
ततः पितृगणैः सार्धं पितृलोकं स गच्छति ॥
दत्तैः षोडशभिः श्राद्धैः पितृभिः सह मोदते ।
पितुः पुत्रेण कर्तव्यं सपिण्डीकरणं सदा ॥²

“The Jīva remains on the path (*i.e.*, the Preta-loka) for a year, O best of birds ; then he passes on into the Pitṛ-loka (and dwells) with the Pitṛ-s.

“By the offering of the sixteen S'rāddha-s he is helped to dwell in joy with the Pitṛ-s. Therefore should the son ever perform the Sapiṇḍī-karaṇa rites for the father.”

¹ *Garuḍa-purāṇa*, II, v, 36.

² *Ibid.*, II, xvi, 6, 7, 20.

CHAPTER III

S'AUCAM

S'AUCAM, or S'auca, consists of the rules laid down for keeping bodily purity, and thus ensuring physical health and strength. Disease is a sign that some law of nature has been disregarded, and the R̥ṣi-s—knowing that the laws of nature are the laws of God, the expression of His being, and that the Jīva is a portion of God enveloped in matter—have treated obedience to the laws of nature as a religious duty.

The visible body, with its invisible double, the Prāṇa-maya-kosa, being made of physical materials, it is necessary to use physical means to make them pure, and to keep them pure, and we need to understand them in order to do this.

The visible body, the Anna-maya-kosa, is composed of particles drawn from the food we eat, the liquids we drink, the air we breathe, and from a constant rain of minute particles, too tiny for us to see, that falls upon us continually from the people and the things around us. This last statement may sound a little strange, but it is true. Our bodies are not

made of dead matter, for there is no such thing as dead matter.¹ Matter is made of tiny living things called atoms, and of other tiny living things that are collections of atoms. A grain of dust is a collection of myriads upon myriads of tiny living creatures, and there are grades upon grades of these minute lives, till we come to what are called microbes, that can be seen with the help of microscopes. Now these microbes and the other smaller lives are all floating about in the air, and our bodies and all things are made up of these. Stones, plants, animals, human beings and all the manufactured things round us, houses, furniture, clothes are constantly giving off clouds of these particles. Everything near us, and still more, everything we touch, gives us some of its particles and we give it some of ours. If we are to be healthy, we must only take into our bodies pure particles and drive away impure ones. The rules of S'auca are intended to show us how to do this.

The food we eat must be pure. Now all things are becoming more alive, or are getting nearer death; are being built up, or are being destroyed. Pure food is becoming more alive, has life in it which is unfolding: its next natural stage is one of "higher integration," that is, of greater complexity.

¹ See p. 67, for what is meant by lifeless matter. A body, as a whole, is said to be "dead" when the Jiva has left it, although the particles of it are alive. As this "dead body" decays, the living particles are set free.

Fresh leaves and fruits, grains and roots, are full of life which is unfolding ; we take that life into our bodies, and it builds them up. These things become impure if they are stale, for the life is then departing, they are on the way to death. All flesh is more or less impure, because its indwelling life has been driven from it, and it is ready to decay ; its next natural stage is one of "disintegration," that is, of breaking up into simpler forms ; the body built by it is more liable to disease than the body built of plant-products, wounds heal less quickly, and fevers run higher.

Of liquids, pure water is necessary to health, and infusions of herbs in it, such as tea, coffee and cocoa, taken in moderation, are harmless and often useful. Milk is at once food and drink of the purest kind. Every form of drink into which alcohol enters is impure, and most harmful to the body. It is fermented liquor, that is liquor in which decomposition has begun, and it injures the tissues of the body, and is a distinct poison to the brain. Especially it is mischievous in a hot climate, bringing about premature decay and early death. So also are drinks impure into which enter such stupefying drugs as Indian hemp—the popular but health-destroying *bhāṅg*.

Pure air is as necessary to health as pure food and drink. As we breathe, we send out a gas,

called carbon dioxide, which is stupefying, and if we shut ourselves into a confined space, all the air in it becomes laden with this, and unfit to breathe. Further the breath carries out with it waste particles from the interior of the body, and unless the fresh air blows these away, they are breathed in again into our lungs and those of others, and are poisonous in their effects.

We must not only build up our bodies out of clean materials, but we must keep the surface of the body clean by frequent washing and bathing. The whole body must be bathed, at least once every-day, and well rubbed in bathing, so that all loose particles may be washed away, and the skin kept clean and fresh. Any part of the body that becomes soiled, feet, hands, etc., should be washed, and washing before and after food must never be omitted. To eat with unwashed hands is to run the risk of soiling the food with dust and other injurious particles, and the washing after food is obviously imperative. The garments next the body should also be washed daily.

The Hindu, ever accustomed to look at the outer world as the symbol of the inner, has joined to his outer ablutions the idea of inner purification. As he washes the outer body, he repeats mantra-s for the purifying of the inner bodies, and thus weaves his religion into the commonest incidents of daily life.

Students will now see why the Ṛṣi-s were so particular about cleanliness. A person with a dirty body, or with dirty clothes, fills the air round him with impure particles, and poisons the people round him. We must be clean, not only for our own sakes, but for the sake of those around us. A dirty person, dirty cloths, dirty houses, are centres of poison, public dangers.

The purity of the Prāṇa-maya-kosa depends on the magnetic currents in it. It is quickly affected by the magnetic properties of surrounding objects, and we have therefore to be careful on this point also. Thus some plant-products and plants, while harmless to the Anna-maya-kosa, are very injurious to the Prāṇa-maya-kosa, such as onions and garlic. Their magnetism is worse than that of flesh. This kosa is also most seriously affected by alcoholic emanations, and by the Prāṇa-maya-kosa-s of others. What is still more important is that it is affected by its own Mano-maya-kosa and, through it, by those of others. Hence the dangers of bad company. Now the purity of the Mano-maya-kosa depends on the purity of its owner's thoughts and desires, and herein lies the most fertile source of impurity in the Anna-maya- and Prāṇa-maya- kosa-s. These two physical kosa-s cannot be pure and healthy if the thoughts and desires are impure. A man may observe the rules of Śauca to the last point of

strictness, but if he be proud, passionate, harsh, vain, suspicious, he is pouring impurity into these kos'a-s faster than any rules can wash it out. In the eyes of the R̥ṣi-s and the Deva-s such a one is ever a-suci.

दूरादावसथान्मूत्रं दूरात्पादावसेचनम् ।
उच्छिष्टान्नं निषेकं च दूरादेव समाचरेत् ॥ ¹

“Far from his dwelling let him remove excrement, far the water used for washing his feet, far the leavings of food, and bath-water.”

आचम्य प्रयतो नित्यमुभे संध्ये समाहितः ।
शुचौ देशे जपञ्जप्यमुपासीत यथाविधि ॥ ²

“Being purified by sipping water, he shall always daily worship in the two twilights with a collected mind, in a pure place, performing Japa according to rule.”

उपस्पृश्य द्विजो नित्यमन्नमद्यात्समाहितः ।
मुक्त्वा चोपस्पृशेत्सम्यगद्विः खानि च संस्पृशेत् ॥ ³

“Having washed, the twice-born should eat food always with a collected mind ; having eaten, let him rinse well and sprinkle the sense-organs with water.”

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, iv, 151.

² *Ibid.*, ii, 222.

³ *Ibid.*, ii, 53.

ज्ञानं तपो ऽग्निराहारो मृन्मनो वार्युपाञ्जनम् ।

वायुः कर्मकिकालौ च शुद्धेः कर्तृणि देहिनाम् ॥ ¹

“Wisdom, austerity, fire, food, earth, mind, water, plastering, wind, rites, the sun and time are the purifiers of bodies.”

अद्विर्गात्राणि शुध्यन्ति मनः सत्येन शुध्यति ।

विद्यातपोभ्यां भूतात्मा बुद्धिज्ञानेन शुध्यति ॥ ²

“The body is purified by water, the mind by truth, the soul by knowledge and austerity, the reason by wisdom.”

न हि ज्ञानेन सदृशं पवित्रमिह विद्यते । ³

“Verily there is no purifier in this world like wisdom.”

अपि चेत्सुदुराचारो भजते मामनन्यभाक् ।

साधुरेव स मन्तव्यः सम्यग्व्यवसितो हि सः ॥

क्षिप्रं भवति धर्मात्मा शश्वच्छान्तिं निगच्छति ।

कौन्तेय प्रतिजानीहि न मे भक्तः प्रणश्यति ॥ ⁴

“Even if the most sinful worship Me with undivided heart, he too must be accounted righteous, for he hath rightly resolved ;

“Speedily he becometh dutiful and goeth to everlasting peace. Know thou, O Kaunteya, that my devotee perisheth never.”

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, v, 105.

² *Ibid.*, 109.

³ *Bhagavad-gīta*, iv, 38.

⁴ *Ibid.*, ix, 30, 31.

CHAPTER IV

THE FIVE DAILY SACRIFICES

WE have seen that there exists a law of Yajña, of Sacrifice, and that man's glory is to voluntarily work with it. We have now to see how the Sanātana-dharma trained its followers to this end.

We may pass over, for the present, the numerous sacrifices of various kinds laid down in the sacred books, and concern ourselves only with the "Great sacrifices" to be offered every day. These are :

The Sacrifice to Ṛṣi-s or Veda-s.

The Sacrifice to Deva-s.

The Sacrifice to Pitṛ-s.

The Sacrifice to Men.

The Sacrifice to Bhūta-s.

Each of these has an outer form and inner meaning, and the latter leads the sacrificer on to the full life of sacrifice. Let us try to understand both.

The outer sacrifice to the Ṛṣi-s or Veda-s, is study and teaching. Every day a man should study some sacred book, and thus gradually acquire the knowledge without which he cannot rightly understand

himself, his position and his duties. And he should ever be ready to share this knowledge with those more ignorant than himself: hence Manu, in describing this sacrifice, calls it teaching¹. A boy should daily offer this sacrifice, reading and carefully thinking over some śloka-s from the *Bhagavad-gītā*, the *Anu-gītā*, *Haṃsa-gītā* or other sacred work. The carefulness and closeness of the thought is more important than the amount read. The inner meaning is that all study should be a sacrifice, learning in order that we may teach.

The outer sacrifice to the Deva-s is the Homa, the recognition of all we owe to the kindly ministry and protection of these active Intelligences working in nature, and the repayment of it by giving for their service a share of our possessions. The inner meaning is the realisation of our relations with the super-physical worlds, and of the inter-dependence of the worlds. We must learn to be in harmony with nature, in accord with all that lives.

The outer sacrifice to the Pitṛ-s is the Tarpaṇa or offering of water, to the older generations of our family, to our ancestors. The inner meaning is the recognition of the great debt we owe to the past, to the generations who occupied the earth before us, and who toiled and laboured that they might hand it on, improved, and enriched, to us, their

¹ See *Manu-smṛiti*, iii, 70.

posterity. No man is truly human who does not recognise what he owes to the past, his debt to the ancestors.

The outer sacrifice to Men is hospitality : every day a true Āryan should feed some one poorer than himself. The inner meaning is the duty of serving and helping humanity, of feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, sheltering the homeless, comforting the sad. Those who are rich are the stewards of the poor.

The outer sacrifice to Bhūta-s, to creatures, is the putting of a little food on the ground, before beginning the meal, for the invisible lower entities around us, and the placing of the remains of the meal in a suitable place for vagrant men and animals. The inner meaning is the duty of caring for those who are beneath us in the human and in the lower kingdoms, the recognition of our debt to them for their services to us, and the practice of kindness and consideration towards them.

Thus the five great daily sacrifices teach man his relations, with all around him, with his superiors, his equals, and his inferiors. They establish the harmonious relations on which the happiness and prosperity of families and of nations depend. They turn the wheel of life in accord with the will of Īsvara, and so help on the evolution of the worlds. They teach each individual that he is

not an isolated unit, but a part of a great whole, a cell in a vast body; and that his happiness and progress, therefore, can only be secure if they subserve the general happiness, and conduce to the general progress.

अध्यापनं ब्रह्मयज्ञः पितृयज्ञस्तु तर्पणम् ।

होमो दैवो बलिर्भौतो नृयज्ञो ऽतिथिपूजनम् ॥ ¹

“Teaching is the Brahman-sacrifice, Tarpaṇa is the Pitṛ-sacrifice, Homa (the offering into the fire) is the Deva-sacrifice, Bali (food) is the Bhūta-sacrifice, hospitality to guests the Manuṣya-sacrifice.”

स्वाध्याये नित्ययुक्तः स्यादैवे चैवेह कर्मणि ।

दैवे कर्मणि युक्तो हि विभर्तीदं चराचरम् ॥ ²

“Let a man ever engage in Veda-study, and in the rites of the Deva-s; engaged in the rites of the Deva-s he supporteth the movable and immovable kingdoms.”

ऋषयः पितरो देवा भूतान्यतिथयस्तथा ।

आशासते कुटुम्बिभ्यस्तेभ्यः कार्यं विजानता ।

स्वाध्यायेनार्चयेत्तर्षीन्होमैर्देवान्यथाविधि ।

पितृञ्छ्राद्धैश्च नृनञ्चैर्भूतानि बलिकर्मणा ॥ ³

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, iii, 70.

² *Ibid.*, 75.

³ *Ibid.*, 80, 81.

“The Ṛṣi-s, the Pitṛ-s, the Deva-s, the Bhūta-s, and guests expect (help) from the householders; hence he who knoweth should give unto them.

“Let him worship, according to the rule, the Ṛṣi-s with Veda-study, the Deva-s with Homa, the Pitṛ-s with S'rāddha-s, men with food, and the Bhūta-s with Bali.”

CHAPTER V

WORSHIP

THE performance of the five daily sacrifices by man as an inter-dependent part of a universe, does not, however, completely satisfy the longings of the truly religious man. He longs to come into conscious relations with the Lord of the Universe, with Īsvara, with the great Life of which his own is a part. This need of man finds its satisfaction in worship. When Vyāsa, master of the final truth of Para-Brahman and ever working for the good of all beings, after he had written even the *Mahā-bhārata* and the *Brahma-sūtra-s* for the instruction of men, still found not peace of mind, Nārada counselled him to sing the praise of Īsvara; and this he did in the *Viṣṇu-bhāgavata*, winning thereby the peace he did not gain before.¹

Worship is the expression of love to the Supreme, of reverence towards Him, of aspiration to reach Him in conscious communion, of longing

¹ *Viṣṇu-bhāgavata*, I, iv, v.

to be united with him, to feel the unity of the individual self with the supreme Self. It may take the form of praise of His Perfection, of prayer rooted in a sense of imperfection, of appeal to His Love, of recognition of His Power, of meditation on His Nature, of intense longing for His Unveiling—and many another, according to the temperament and the stage of evolution of the worshipper. But whether in the peasant or in the philosopher, it is the expression of the longing after Brahman; the expression differs with the emotional and intellectual evolution, but the root-longing is the same.

The All, the Unconditioned, is never an Object of worship. Attributes are needed for worship, on which the mind can be fixed, by which the emotions can be stirred. The Sa-guṇa-Brahman, Īśvara, is the Object of worship, whom all prayers and praises reach, to whom all contemplation is directed. He may be adored as S'iva or Viṣṇu, as Mahā-deva or Nārāyaṇa, as Durgā or Lakṣmī, as Gaṇeśa, Indra, Agni, Sarasvatī, or as an Avatāra—Rāma, or Kṛṣṇa, or Buddha; but under whatever name and form, it is Īśvara who is worshipped.

This explains a matter that often puzzles boys, why sometimes S'iva, sometimes Viṣṇu, is spoken of as the Supreme being, why one Purāṇa exalts One and another exalts Another. All these are Forms; and Īśvara is One. The worshipper is worshipping

Īsvara, and is thinking of Īsvara, under the Form which he loves best. He is not worshipping the Form, but the Lord in the Form—as a wife loves her husband, not the clothes he wears, though even those may be dear for the sake of the wearer. The worshipper worships the Love, the Beauty, the Power of Īsvara, as revealed in some one of His Divine Forms. We can only grasp a little, being small, but we grasp in our worship parts of the one Lord.

This is why the quarrels of different religions, and of different sects in the same religion, are so foolish and so ignorant. All are worshipping the same Īsvara, and the differences are only differences of names, due to differences in the worshippers, not in the Object of worship.

Pūjā is the general simple form of worship. A picture or image is used, mantra-s are recited, flowers are offered, water is poured out, and in these outer forms the inner love finds expression, and then rises beyond the forms to the Object thus served. The Form selected as representing the Object is sometimes the family Deva or Devī, and sometimes is the Iṣṭa-deva, the Form chosen by the worshipper himself, or by his Guru for him.

Upāsanā is a term that includes many forms of worship, including meditation, and the daily Saṁdhyā, which should be performed by all followers of the Sanātana-dharma. There are two forms of

Samdhyā, the Vaidika and the Tāntrika, and a boy should perform the Samdhyā according to his caste and family customs. He learns it from a properly qualified instructor, and should then practise it daily. Meditation, in its definite stages, belongs to manhood rather than to boyhood.

नैष्कर्म्यमप्यच्युतभाववर्जितं न शोभते ज्ञानमलं निरञ्जनम् ।

कुतः पुनः शश्वदभद्रमीश्वरे न चार्पितं कर्म यदप्यकारणम् ॥ ¹

“ Even the highest and most stainless knowledge, even perfect unselfishness in actions, shine not if uninspired by devotion to the Imperishable. How then shall acts (bring peace) which (aim at fruit and) are not pure, or even those that are performed without desire, if they are not offered up to Isvara ? ”

ये त्वक्षरमनिर्देश्यमव्यक्तं पर्युपासते ।

ते प्राप्नुवन्ति मामेव सर्वभूतहिते रताः ॥

क्लेशो ऽधिकतरस्तेषामव्यक्तासक्तचेतसाम् ।

अव्यक्ता हि गतिर्दुःखं देहवद्विरवाप्यते ॥

ये तु सर्वाणि कर्माणि मयि संन्यस्य मत्पराः ।

अनन्येनैव योगेन मां ध्यायन्त उपासते ॥

¹ *Viṣṇu-bhāgavata*, I, v, 12.

तेषामहं समुद्धर्ता मृत्युसंसारसागरात् ।

भवामि न चिरात्पार्थ मय्यावेशितचेतसाम् ॥ ¹

“They who worship the Indestructible, the Ineffable, the Unmanifested . . . ever working for the welfare of all creatures, these all come to me.

“The difficulty of those whose minds are set on the Unmanifested is greater; for the path of the Unmanifested is hard for the embodied to reach.

“Those verily who, renouncing all actions in Me and intent on Me, worship, meditating on Me with whole-hearted Yoga.

“Those I speedily lift up from the ocean of death and existence, O Pārtha, their minds being fixed on me.”

ईश्वरः सर्वभूतानां हृद्देशे ऽर्जुन तिष्ठति ।

भ्रामयन्सर्वभूतानि यन्त्रारूढानि मायया ॥

तमेव शरणं गच्छ सर्वभावेन भारत ।

तत्प्रसादात्परां शान्तिं स्थानं प्राप्स्यसि शाश्वतम् ॥ ²

“The Lord dwelleth in the hearts of all beings, O Arjuna, causing all beings to revolve by His illusive power, as though mounted on a wheel.

“Flee unto Him for shelter with all thy being, O Bhārata; by His grace thou shalt obtain supreme peace and the everlasting dwelling places.”

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xii, 3-7.

² *Ibid.*, xviii, 61, 62.

ये यथा मां प्रपद्यन्ते तांस्तथैव भजाम्यहम् ।

मम वर्त्मानुवर्तन्ते मनुष्याः पार्थ सर्वशः ॥ ¹

“ However men approach Me, even so do I welcome them, for the path men take from every side is mine, O Pārtha.”

यो यो यां यां तनुं भक्तः श्रद्धया ऽर्चितुमिच्छति ।

तस्य तस्याचलां श्रद्धां तामेव विदधाम्यहम् ॥ ²

“ Any devotee who seeketh to worship with faith any such aspect, I verily bestow the unswerving faith of that man.”

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, iv, 11.

² *Ibid.*, vii, 21.

CHAPTER VI

THE FOUR ĀS'RAMA-S

NATIONS have characteristics, just as have individuals, and among the characteristics of the Hindu nation in old days were order and balance. The Sanātana-dharma stamped these characteristics on the people, and thus shaped a very dignified type of man, evenly developed and well balanced. So much are these the characteristics of the true follower of the Sanātana-dharma, that S'rī Kṛṣṇa said : " Equilibrium is called Yoga." ¹

The large view of life taken in the Veda-s is the root of these characteristics. All things exist for the sake of the Ātman, the Self, and by his will. They exist merely to give him the experiences he desires to pass through. He wills to unfold his powers in the lower worlds, and to become the self-conscious Ruler of the outer realms of denser matter, as he is ever the Inner Ruler, Immortal. He is not in haste, being Eternal, and knows it best to take each experience in order, and thus

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, ii, 48.

to unfold symmetrically and harmoniously. This order is imposed by Īsvara, the Supreme Self, on the lower kingdoms of our world; the seed, the root, the stem, the leaves, the flower, the fruit succeed each other in due order, and each has its place and its beauty in its season; so also He imposes the stages of human life—infancy, childhood, youth, maturity, old age; this sequence man cannot escape from nor change; but the unfolding Jīvātman in man, clouded by the matter he has not yet mastered, pushes irregularly in various directions, led by Manas dominated by Kāma, grasping at the things of one stage while yet in another, and so hindering his due evolution in each. The child would be a youth, the youth a man; the old man grasps backward at the joys of youth; thus life is robbed of its serenity and thereby of half its usefulness.

In order to counteract this mistaken eagerness and lack of balanced order, the great Ṛṣi-s marked out for the eldest-born family of the Āryan race the definite stages in the life of the individual from birth to death, and the definite stages in the life of the Jīvātman in his long evolution through myriads of births and deaths. In each case these stages are four; in the life between one birth and one death they are called Āsrama-s, resting-places, dwellings: in the life passing through countless births and deaths they are called Varṇa-s, colours, or castes.

We are concerned here with the Āsrama-s. As said, these stages are four : Brahma-carya, the stage of studentship ; Gārha-sthya, the stage of householdership ; Vāna-prastha, the stage of forest-dwelling, *i.e.*, seclusion ; Samnyāsa, the stage of total renunciation, *i.e.*, asceticism.¹

In none of these stages must the man grasp at the special duties of the other three ; the student must not be a householder, a recluse, or an ascetic ; the householder must not be a celibate, a recluse, or an ascetic ; the recluse must not seek again the joys of the household ; nor must the ascetic long after the quiet attachments of the recluse. Each stage has its own duties and its own pleasures. Discharged and enjoyed each in its own stage, they lead to the orderly unfolding of the Jīvātman ; when the Āsrama-s are disregarded, his evolution is delayed.

Now in modern days the Āsrama-s cannot be exactly lived according to the details of the ancient rules, the conditions having changed so much ; but if we get a clear idea of the fundamental duties of each, we shall still be able to shape the life to an orderly course of development.

The life of the student begins with the Upanayana ceremony, his " second birth," and from that time forward certain virtues must be striven for by

¹ See *Manu-smṛti*, vi, 87.

the boy. He must be hardy and simple in his habits; these virtues make his body strong and healthy; he acquires them by rising early, bathing, eating moderately of plain food, taking plenty of exercise, not allowing himself to lounge luxuriously and idly. Contrast a boy who lives in this way with one who lies late in bed, who over-eats himself on sweetmeats and rich dishes, who takes little exercise, and spends much of his time lying on soft pillows. The one is alert, strong, hard-muscled, vigorous, active, and will be a strong healthy man: the other is heavy, flabby, fat, lazy or too thin and weak, and will soon be diseased and suffering.

The student must also strive for the virtues of industry, obedience, humility and serviceableness; youth is the preparation-time of life, and industrious study to acquire knowledge is absolutely necessary for useful manhood; obedience is using the experience of his elders to guide his conduct, and saves him many a trouble in early life, and only he who knows how to obey is fit to rule hereafter; humility lifts him quickly, as all are willing to share what they have with the humble; and serviceableness in the narrow circle of the family and the school builds up the nature that will serve humanity.

The student must be chaste in thought and act, a celibate in mind and body. He must guard his thoughts, for the boy who does not think

impurity will not act impurity. He should not think of sex, nor yield to day-dreaming. Only the pure in thought and in body can pass unstained into happy household life. The very name of the student is the *Brahma-cārin*, which has come now to mean almost exclusively the celibate. Premature age, weakness, disease, race-decay, spring from student-marriage, against the ancient law.

The household stage is entered at marriage, when the youth has completed his school and college career, and is ready to take up the duties and responsibilities of household life. Of all the *Āsrama-s* this is the most important, for it supports all the others.¹ The welfare alike of the family and of the nation depends on the householder, and their happiness and prosperity are in his hands. A good husband, a good father, a good master, a good citizen, is the noblest of men. The home is the school of unselfishness, compassion, tenderness, temperance, purity, helpfulness, prudence, industry, right judgment, charity. The qualities that make the good householder, when shown to his own circle in house and State, are the qualities that make the Sage and the Saint when shown to all. The degradation of the ideal of the householder has made modern life petty and sordid, and the half entrance into it and the confusion of its

¹ See *Manu-smṛiti*, iii, 77, and vi, 89, 90.

duties with those of the student, caused by the modern evil of student-marriage has deprived the entry into it of its ancient solemnity and dignity. The plucking and eating of unripe fruit deprives the eater of its sweetness.

Certain well-born but thoughtless Brāhmaṇa youths, abandoning their homes before due time, went into the forests to lead a life of asceticism. Indra pitied them, and, assuming the form of a golden bird, taught them: "Follow the household life! *It* is the field for the cultivation of virtues. It is sacred. Worship of the Deva-s, study, repayment of the debt to the pitṛ-s by the rearing of a family and helping on new lives as we have been reared and helped—these are the austerest of penances. Bear the heavy burden of the duties of the household! They that run away from their work fall into sin. To eat the remnant of the food left after helping the needy is to eat the true remnant of sacrifice.¹

When the householder sees his sons able to bear the full burden of his duties, when the signs of age appear, and his children's children are round him, the time has come for him and his wife to surrender the headship of the home, and to retire from active life and wordly labour. A quiet and somewhat secluded life, given to study, to self-sacrifice for the good of

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, S'ānti-parvan, xi.

others, to the counselling of the younger, such should be the third Āsrama in our modern days.

Finally in old age a man may rightly enter the fourth Āsrama, that of the ascetic, passing his last days in meditation and worship, till he enters willingly the life beyond death, to reap the fruits of a well spent earthly life, hereafter to return for further evolution.

ब्रह्मचारी गृहस्थश्च वानप्रस्थो यतिस्तथा ।

एते गृहस्थप्रभवाश्चत्वारः पृथगाश्रमाः ॥ ¹

“The student, the householder, the forest-dweller, the ascetic—these, the four separate orders, spring from the householder.”

वेदानधीत्य वेदौ वा वेदं वा ऽपि यथाक्रमम् ।

अविप्लुतब्रह्मचर्यो गृहस्थाश्रममावसेत् ॥

गृहस्थस्तु यदा पश्येद्वलीपलितमात्मनः ।

अपत्यस्य तथा ऽपत्यं तदा ऽरण्यं समाश्रयेत् ॥

वनेषु तु विद्वत्त्यैवं तृतीयं भागमायुषः ।

चतुर्थमायुषो भागं त्यक्त्वा सङ्गान्परिव्रजेत् ॥ ²

“Having studied the Veda-s, or two Veda-s, or even one Veda, in due order, without violating celibacy, let him enter the household-order.

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, vi, 87.

² *Ibid.*, iii, 2 and vi, 2, 33.

“When the householder sees wrinkles (on his skin), whiteness (in his hair), and the progeny of his progeny, then let him retire to the forest.

“Having passed the third portion of his life in the forest, let him abandon all attachments and wander (as an ascetic) the fourth portion of his life.”

अनधीत्य द्विजो वेदाननुत्पाद्य तथा प्रजाम् ।

अनिष्टा चैव यज्ञैश्च मोक्षमिच्छन्ब्रजत्यधः ॥ ¹

“A twice-born man who seeketh Mokṣa without having studied the Veda-s, without having produced offspring, and without having offered sacrifices, goeth downwards.”

अनारोग्यमनायुष्यमस्वर्ग्यं चातिभोजनम् ।

अपुण्यं लोकविद्विष्टं तस्मात्तत्परिवर्जयेत् ॥ ²

“Over-eating is against health, long life, (the attainment of) heaven and merit, and is disapproved by the world ; therefore let it be avoided.”

नोदितो गुरुणा नित्यमप्रणोदित एव वा ।

कुर्यादध्ययने यत्नमाचार्यस्य हितेषु च ॥

वर्जयेन्मधु मांसं च गन्धं माल्यं रसान्निव्रज्यः ।

शुक्तानि चैव सर्वाणि प्राणिनां चैव हिंसनम् ॥

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, vi, 37.

² *Ibid.*, ii, 57.

कामं क्रोधं च लोभं च नर्तनं गीतवादनम् ॥

द्यूतं च जनवादं च परिवादं तथा ऽनृतम् ।

एकः शयीत सर्वत्र न रेतः स्कन्दयेत्क्वचित् ।

कामाद्वि स्कन्दयन्रेतो हिनस्ति व्रतमात्मनः ॥ ¹

“ Directed or not directed by his teacher, let the student ever engage in study, and in doing services to his preceptor.

“ Let the student refrain from wine, meat, perfumes, garlands, tasty and savoury dishes, women, acids, and injury to sentient creatures ; . . .

“ From lust, anger and greed, dancing, singing, and playing on musical instruments, from dice-playing, gossip, slander and from untruth ; . . .

“ Let the student always sleep alone, and let him not waste his seed ; he who from lust wasteth his seed, destroyeth his vow.”

यथा वायुं समाश्रित्य सर्वे जीवन्ति जन्तवः ।

तथा गृहस्थमाश्रित्य वर्तन्त इतराश्रमाः ॥

सर्वेषामपि चैतेषां वेदश्रुतिविधानतः ।

गृहस्थ उच्यते श्रेष्ठः स त्रीनेतान्बिभर्ति हि ॥

यथा नदीनदाः सर्वे समुद्रे यान्ति संस्थितिम् ।

तथैवाश्रमिणः सर्वे गृहस्थे यान्ति संस्थितिम् ॥ ²

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, ii, 191, 177-180.

² *Ibid.*, iii, 77 and vi, 89, 90.

"As all creatures live supported by the air, so the other orders exist supported by the house-holder.

"Of all these (Āsrama-s), by the declaration of the Veda-scripture, the householder is the highest ; he verily supporteth the other three.

"As all streams and rivers flow to rest in the ocean, so all the Āsrama-s flow to rest in the householder."

अनाश्रितः कर्मफलं कार्यं कर्म करोति यः ।

स संन्यासी च योगी च न निरग्निरन चाक्रियः ॥ ¹

"He that performeth such action as in duty, independently of the fruit of action, he is a Saṁnyāsin, he is a Yogin, not he that is without fire and without rites.

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, vi, 1.

CHAPTER VII

THE FOUR CASTES

IN the long pilgrimage of the Jīvātman through myriads of births, already referred to, there are four distinctly marked stages, called of old Varṇa-s, or colours, and recognised in the social polity laid down by Manu as distinct social classes, or castes.

These stages are universal, all Jīvātman-s passing through them; the peculiarity of the Sanātana-dharma is that it has made them the framework of its social polity. In the early days the outer caste coincided with the stages: Jīvātman-s at each stage were born into bodies belonging to that stage, and the whole of society was therefore contented and progressive. But in these later days, as Arjuna truly foresaw in his distress on Kuru-kṣetra, varṇa-saṃkara, caste-confusion, has come on Āryāvarta and her whole peninsula. Jīvātman-s at each stage are being born into bodies of other stages, and hence, as surely as content and progress arose out of the harmony of elder days, do disorder and stagnation arise out of the disharmony of the present. How a

better state of things may be brought about is a question for men to discuss and resolve, not for inexperienced boys. What we need here is to understand the meaning of caste.

We have said there are four stages.

The first is that which includes the infancy, childhood and youth of the Jīvātman; he is unfolding youthful virtues, developing obedience, serviceableness, patience; he has few responsibilities; his duties may be summed up in the word, Service. Where there is no caste-confusion, such young Jīvātman-s are born only into the lower social stratum; they are labourers, artisans, servants, manual workers of every kind. In the social polity of the Sanātana-dharma, such Jīvātman-s were born into the caste of S'ūdra-s. In these days of caste-confusion, such young Jīvātman-s, whether born in the S'ūdra caste in India, or into the corresponding class elsewhere, are happy, contented and useful; but where, as often happens now-a-days, they are born into higher castes, or classes, they do much harm to their surroundings by their incapacity to discharge higher duties, and to bear the weight of higher responsibilities. So also difficulties arise when older Jīvātman-s are born into the lower bodies, and fret against their environment, are discontented and rebellious. Of course a really advanced Jīvātman is content in any body, but the mediocre Jīvātman-s quite naturally and

inevitably fight against uncongenial surroundings, and their restlessness is used by Īsvara to help on evolution and to bring about necessary changes.

The second stage covers the first half of the Jīvātman's manhood, when he is fit to gain wealth, to enjoy it and use it, to organise labour and direct it, to undertake great responsibilities, and administer well accumulated possessions. This includes the commerical class, the great traders, and the organisers of industry, the capitalists, bankers, the managers of large industrial concerns. In the social polity of the Sanātana-dharma, such Jīvātman-s were born into the caste of Vaisya-s, and were trained in it gradually to see as aim the common good and the general prosperity, instead of mere personal aggrandisement.

The third stage makes the second half of the Jīvātman's manhood, when his responsibilities and powers widen out to include the nation, and he is called to legislate, to rule, to work unselfishly for the State, and to use his power to protect and to regulate, not to aggrandise himself. This includes kings, judges, legislators, warriors, all who rule and keep order in the State. In the social polity of the Sanātana-dharma, such mature Jīvātman-s were born into the Kṣātriya caste, and bore the burden of kingship and of fighting for the national defence.

The fourth stage embraces the serene age of the Jivātman, when earthly things have lost their charm, and he becomes the counsellor and friend and helper of all his youngers. This includes the priests, the counsellors, the teachers of every kind—authors, scientists, poets, philosophers. In the social polity of the Sanātana-dharma, such Jivātman-s were born into the caste of Brāhmaṇa-s, the advanced and unselfish ones who gave much and needed little. Caste-confusion in India has struck this caste most hardly, as the degradation of the higher is always worse than that of the lower. The S'ūdra Jivātman in the Brāhmaṇa body is the greatest danger to the Sanātana-dharma.

Much of the evil has grown from men of each caste grasping at the work of the other castes, and from each thinking more of the rights his caste gives him than of the duties it imposes. The Brāhmaṇa and the Kṣattriya have claimed their privileges ardently, and have shrunk from the heavy burdens belonging to their castes. Naturally this attitude has provoked opposition, and antagonisms have replaced mutual service and good-will. Hence caste has become a source of social bitterness, instead of a framework maintaining all in happy order.

At least this much every boy can do towards bringing about a happier state of things: he can

diligently practise the virtues characteristic of his caste, and avoid pride, vanity, and grasping at privileges. Let the S'ūdra be remarkable for his industry, fidelity and serviceableness ; let the Vaisya be remarkable for his diligence, discretion and charity ; let the Kṣatttriya be remarkable for his courage, generosity and vigour ; let the Brāhmaṇa be remarkable for his patience, purity, learning, truthfulness and self-sacrifice. And it may be that, if the castes thus practise their several Dharma-s, caste-confusion may gradually pass away.

ब्राह्मणो ऽस्य मुखमासीद् बाहू राजन्यः कृतः ।

ऊरू तदस्य यद्वैश्यः पद्भ्यां शूद्रो अजायत ॥ ¹

“The Brāhmaṇa was His mouth ; the Rājanya was made His two arms ; His two thighs the Vaisya ; the S'ūdra was born from His two feet.”

सर्वस्यास्य तु सर्गस्य गुप्त्यर्थं स महाद्युतिः ।

मुखबाहूरुपजानां पृथक्कर्माण्यकल्पयत् ॥

अध्यापनं चाध्ययनं यजनं याजनं तथा ।

दानं प्रतिग्रहं चैव ब्राह्मणानामकल्पयत् ॥

प्रजानां रक्षणं दानमिज्याऽध्ययनमेव च ।

¹ *Rg-veda*, X, xc, 12.

विषयेष्वप्रसक्तिं च क्षत्रियस्य समादिशत् ॥
 पशूनां रक्षणं दानमिज्याऽध्ययनमेव च ।
 वणिक्पथं कुसीदं च वैश्यस्य कृषिमेव च ॥
 एकमेव तु शूद्रस्य प्रभुः कर्म समादिशत् ।
 एतेषामेव वर्णानां शुश्रूषामनसूयया ॥¹

“ He, the Resplendent, for the sake of protecting all this creation, assigned separate karma-s to those born of His mouth, arms, thighs and feet.

“ Teaching and studying the Veda, sacrificing and also guiding others in offering sacrifices, gifts and receiving of gifts, these He assigned to the Brāhmaṇa-s.

“ The protection of the people, gifts, sacrificing, and study of the Veda-s, non-attachment amid the objects of the senses, these He prescribed to the Kṣātriya-s.

“ The protection of cattle, gifts, sacrificing, and study of the Veda-s, commerce, banking, and agriculture, to the Vaiśya-s.

“ The Lord commanded one karma only for the S'ūdra-s, to serve ungrudgingly these other castes.”

यस्य यल्लक्षणं प्रोक्तं पुंसो वर्णाभिव्यञ्जकम् ।
 यदन्यत्रापि दृश्येत तत्तेनैव विनिर्दिशेत् ॥²

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, i, 87-91.

² *Viṣṇu-bhāgavata*, VII, ix, 35.

“What is said as to the marks (of conduct) indicative of a man's caste, if those marks are found in another, let him be designated by the caste of his marks (and not of his birth).”

न योनिर्नापि संस्कारो न श्रुतं न च संततिः ।

कारणानि द्विजत्वस्य वृत्तमेव तु कारणम् ॥¹

“Not birth, nor Saṃskāra-s, nor study of the Veda-s, nor ancestry, are the causes of being twice-born. Conduct alone is verily the cause thereof.”

सत्यं दानं क्षमा शीलमानुशंस्यं तपो वृणा ।

दृश्यन्ते यत्र नागेन्द्र स ब्राह्मण इति स्मृतः ॥

शूद्रे तु यद्भवेच्छूद्रो द्विजे तच्च न विद्यते ।

न वै शूद्रो भवेच्छूद्रो ब्राह्मणो न च ब्राह्मणः ॥

यत्रैतल्लक्ष्यते सर्प वृत्तं स ब्राह्मणः स्मृतः ।

यत्रैतन्न भवेत्सर्प तं शूद्र इति निर्दिशेत् ॥²

“Truth, charity, forgiveness, good conduct, gentleness, austerity, and mercy, where these are seen, O king of serpents, he is called a Brāhmaṇa.

“If these marks exist in a S'ūdra, and not in one twice-born, the S'ūdra, is not a S'ūdra, nor the Brāhmaṇa a Brāhmaṇa.

“Where this conduct is shown, O serpent, he is called a Brāhmaṇa ; where this is not, O serpent, he should be regarded as a S'ūdra.”

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, cccxiii, 108.

² *Ibid.*, clxxx, 21, 25, 26.

आचारहीनं न पुनन्ति वेदा यद्यप्यधीताः सह षड्भिरङ्गैः ।
 छन्दांस्येनं मृत्युकाले त्यजन्ति नीडं शकुन्ता इव जातपक्षाः ॥
 आचारहीनस्य तु ब्राह्मणस्य वेदाः षडङ्गास्त्वखिलाः सयज्ञाः ।
 कां प्रीतिमुत्पादयितुं समर्था अन्धस्य दारा इव दर्शनीयाः ॥¹

“The Veda-s help not the man that hath not righteous ways, even though they be studied together with all the aṅga-s. The Chandas-s, abandon him at the supreme moment of death, even as full-fledged birds their nest.

“To the Brāhmaṇa that is void of righteous ways, the Veda-s, even in their entirety, and with all aṅga-s and all sacrifices too, can bring no more joy than a wife, lovely to see, can bring unto a blind husband.”

¹ *Vasiṣṭha-smṛti*, vi, 3, 4.

CHAPTER VIII

THE FOUR PURUṢĀRTHA-S

THE question may well be asked : What is the good of all these institutions of āśrama-s and varṇa-s, stages of life and caste-classes ; of worship, sacrifices, saṃskāra-s ; indeed, what is the good of all these visible and invisible worlds, births and re-births, karma and its consequences ; in short, why is there any universe, why is there any life, why do we live, what is the purpose, end, aim, object of life, what is the good of it all ?

This question is, no doubt, the question of questions. It is the final question, to which all other questions lead up ; in which they are all summed up. The answer to it, therefore, is the answer of all answers : The proper understanding of that answer makes it possible to answer all questions that may arise in connection with the human being's life-work. The Scriptures therefore duly deal with the question and supply the answer.

We have seen, in ch. i, that, behind and beyond everything, as the root, source, basis of everything,

we have to believe in "the One Existence", One Supreme Being. Each religion calls It by many names. Different religions and different languages give it different names. In fact, "That Infinite One bears *all* names whatsoever ; It wears all forms that there are in the universe, minutest to vastest ; It does all acts, makes all movements, everywhere, in all time". Whatever names, forms, acts, there are, all belong to It.

ब्रह्मैतद्भि सर्वाणि नामानि . . रूपाणि . . कर्माणि विभर्ति । ¹

The nearest manifestation of It, and the conclusive proof to us of It, is our own consciousness, which appears as self-consciousness, 'I am'. It is not possible to doubt the existence of my-Self. In fact, no one ever can, or ever does, doubt It. If any one doubts It, then he, the doubter, is himself It ; It exists as the doubter and as the doubt. Behind, beyond, higher, deeper, further than, this Ultimate Fact, it is not possible to go. It is the Ultimate Mystery ; It is also the Immediately Sun-clear ; our-Self.

Now this Final Principle of all Life and Consciousness, *as if* for Play, Amusement, Pastime, Līlā, Kṛīḍā, makes and unmakes, creates and destroys, countless bodies, countless worlds. It, so to say, puts on and puts off appearances ; as a

¹ *Bṛhad-aranyakoṇiṣad*, I, vi, 1-3.

human being may put on and put off clothes ; or as he may imagine himself now a king and again a beggar, now waking and working, and again sleeping and resting.

मन्वन्तराण्यसंख्यानि सर्गः संहार एव च ।

क्रीडन्निवैतत्कुरुते परमेष्ठी पुनः पुनः ॥ ¹

लोकवत्तु लीलाकैवल्यम् । ²

This Life-Principle, this Spirit, appears first to descend into matter, and then to re-ascend out of it ; to be 'born' into a body, to put on a body, to make it grow, then to make it decay, then to cast it off, and, as is said, 'die'. This process is repeated endlessly, on all scales of time and space, in minutest atoms and vastest star-systems. Details are sketched, in broad outlines, in the *Purāṇa-s*. This process constitutes what we call cakra-s, cycles, of involution, evolution, dissolution, re-involution, etc. This has been briefly indicated in Part I of this book.

प्रवृत्ति, निवृत्ति ; अवरोह, आरोह ; प्रसव, प्रतिप्रसव ; सृष्टि, लय ; आविर्भाव, तिरोभाव ; विकास, संकोच ; विहार, संहार ; संचर, प्रतिसंचर ; ईहा, उपरम ; व्युत्थान, निरोध ; बन्ध, मोक्ष ; उन्मीलन, निमीलन ; संसृति, निर्वाण ; इत्यादि ।

¹ *Manu*, I, 80.

² *Brahma-sūtra*, II, i, 33.

Such are the many names for the two parts of this cyclical movement.

After having passed through very many other living forms, referred to before, in pt. I, ch. ii, the Spirit comes to the stage of man. Then it becomes, or, rather, makes itself, subject to the laws of conscious Karma and its consequences.

Now, when the spirit or soul has advanced to a fairly high stage in evolution as man, after many births, it becomes able to ask, and asks, itself, consciously, What am I ?, What is all this ?, Why is all this ?, What is the meaning and purpose of life ? Slowly it discovers answers, as above, with the help of the teachings embodied in the Scriptures, by the Elders of the Race. The "Meaning" of Life is, as just said, first Play, Pastime, Līlā, Krīḍā, then Kaivalyam, resting quietly, in Soli-tude, Alone, All-one ; first 'Waking', then 'Sleeping', first 'Activity' then 'Rest'. The "Purpose" of Life, always, is the achievement of Happiness, Pleasure, Joy, Bliss. That is clearly the object of 'Play' as well as 'Rest'. But, broadly, two kinds of Happiness may be distinguished. One is that which arises from contact with the objects of the senses ; either in direct or in indirect connection with them. The other is that which arises from complete rest and repose within one-Self, in deep sound 'slumber', after tiring of, and retiring from, all sense-objects.

सुखाभ्युदयिकं चैव नैःश्रेयसिकमेव च ।

प्रवृत्तं च निवृत्तं च द्विविधं कर्म वैदिकम् ॥ ¹

“The rules of conduct, laid down in Vaidika-dharma, are intended to secure both Abhyudaya, worldly joy, and Nih-sreyasa, the supreme happiness”. It would be convenient if we called the former by the name of Pleasure ; and the latter, of Happiness ; or Sense-enjoyment, and Spiritual Bliss, respectively.

Because sense-pleasure is not possible without the contrasting background of sense-pain, as light is not possible without darkness, therefore we have pain also in life.

द्वंद्वैरयोजयन्नेमाः सुखदुःखादिभिः प्रजाः ।²

इच्छाद्वेषसमुत्थेन द्वंद्वमोहेन भारत ।

सर्वभूतानि संमोहं सर्गे यान्ति परंतप ॥ ³

“The Supreme Being imposed on all His Progeny, countless pairs of opposites, beginning with pleasure and pain. All creatures, during the period of creative activity, are infatuated, crazed, overcome, by the glamour and confusion created by these pairs of opposites ; which pairs are all ultimately connected with Like and Dislike, Love and Hate”.

¹ *Manu*, XII, 88.

² *Ibid.*, i, 26.

³ *Gita*, vii, 27.

In accordance with the Meaning and Nature of Life, the Purpose of Life becomes twofold ; (a) first the securing of Pleasure or Sense-enjoyment, *Abhyudaya*, Prosperity in this world ; then (b) the achievement of Happiness or Spiritual Bliss, *Niḥsreyasa*, the Greatest Good. Because the life of the human being is not lived as solitary, but in Society, therefore, it is not possible for anyone to achieve either Pleasure or Happiness without a proper organisation of society, and a proper planning out of the individual life. Hence we have the scheme of *varṇa-s* and *āśrama-s*. By the due observance of the rules of this scheme, it becomes possible for every human being to secure a reasonable amount of Sense-enjoyment, in the first two *āśrama-s*, and, then, gradually, to achieve Spiritual Bliss in the next two. Because refined cultured sense-enjoyment, such as befits human beings living in Society, is not possible without a reasonable amount of property ; and the secure possession and use of such property is not possible without mutual understanding and self-restraint ; therefore the Purpose of Sense-enjoyment, *Abhyudaya*, becomes sub-divided into three. (1) *Kama*, the pleasure of the senses, and the fine arts, to be rationally enjoyed in the Family-life, and as subserved and refined by (2) *Artha*, riches, useful and artistic possessions, Property, acquired,

maintained and used in accordance with (3) Dharma, Law and Religion, which lay down rights and duties. The order in which the three are usually mentioned is (1) Dharma, (2) Artha, (3) Kāma, in order to emphasise the supreme importance of Dharma; and then, in the next degree, that of Artha, for the preservation and the well-being of Society. The next and final Purpose, called Nih-sreyasa, 'greatest good', 'than which there is no greater good', Summum Bonum, paramaṃ sreyah, is usually not sub-divided. Thus we have the four Puruṣārtha-s, ends or purposes of life, 'what the human being desires'.

धर्ममूलो ऽर्थ इत्युक्तः कामो ऽर्थफलमुच्यते ।

मूलमेतत्त्रिवर्गस्य निवृत्तिर्मोक्ष उच्यते ॥

यत्र धर्मस्तथैवार्थः कामश्चैवानुवर्णितः ।

त्रिवर्ग इति विख्यातो गण एष स्वयंमुवा ॥

चतुर्थो मोक्ष इत्येव पृथगर्थः पृथग्गुणः ।

मोक्षस्यास्ति त्रिवर्गो ऽन्यः प्रोक्तः सत्त्वं रजस्तमः ॥¹

धर्मार्थावुच्यते श्रेयः कामार्थौ धर्म एव च ।

अर्थ एवेह वा श्रेयस्त्रिवर्ग इति तु स्थितिः ॥²

धर्मार्थकाममोक्षाख्यं पुरुषार्थचतुष्टयम् ॥

"The 'triad' of Dharma-Artha-Kāma is known as the tri-varga. Mokṣa has its own triad, that of

¹ *Maha-bhārata*, Śānti-parvan, cxxiii, 5-8.

² *Manu*, ii, 224.

sattva-rajas-tamas ” ; *i.e.*, the transcendence of these three, rising superior to these three, knowing them to be the qualities of the Changeful Many (Pt. I, ch. ii, *supra*), Prakṛti, and not of the Changeless Supreme Being, the One Existence, Paramātman, the Supreme Self. Another way of explaining this triad of Mokṣa is that the tamas-aspect of it is Bhakti, universal love ; the rajas-aspect, Yogaisvarya, yoga-siddhi-s, yogic powers, used for the service of living beings, and the sattva-aspect, Jñāna or Pra-jñāna and Virakti or Mukti proper, extinction of all selfishness, freedom from all selfish desire, and the constant awareness that All Life is One Life, though manifesting in conflicting and mutually balancing and neutralising opposites.

In the light of these four ends of life we can now understand the ‘good’, the ‘use’, of all the details of the Varṇāśrama-dharma, Vaidika-dharma, Sanātana-dharma, or Mānava-dharma, as it is variously called. They all help us to achieve these ends duly.

Sanātana-dharma is so called, because it is the Dharma, the Scheme of Laws, of mutual rights-and-duties, human and divine, which arises out of the Nature of the One and Only Sanātana, ‘Everlasting’, *viz.*, the Paramātman.

नित्यः सर्वगतः स्थाणुरचलो ज्यं सनातनः ।¹

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, ii, 24.

“ This self is eternal, all-pervading, fixed, motionless, ever-lasting”. It is called Vaidika-dharma, because it is religion based upon Veda, ‘ spiritual and scientific knowledge ’; Varṇāśrama-dharma, the Dharma of Varṇa-s, vocational class-castes, and of Āsrama-s, stages of life; Mānava-dharma, the Religion of Humanity, ordained by Manu, and for all Humanity, the race of mānava-s, ‘ men ’.

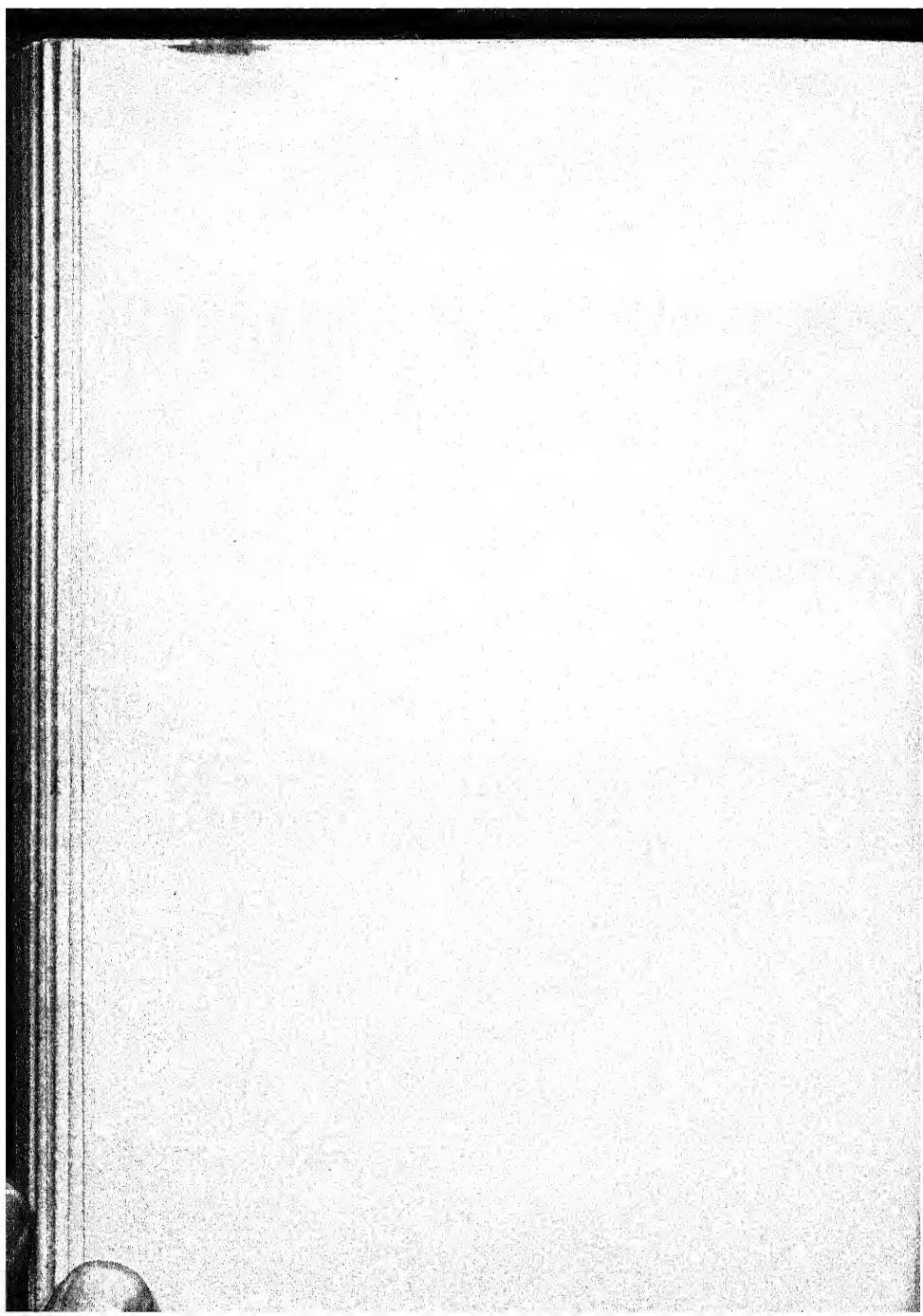
The main features of this great and comprehensive Dharma may be summed up in a Unity, and a few duads, triads, and quartettes. Thus :

Paramātman or Brahman, “ the One without a Second ”; Puruṣa and Prakṛti, the One and the Many, the One including countless Seconds; Īśvara-Jīva-Jagat, a personal god, souls, and a solar system; Pravṛtti and Nivṛtti, evolution and involution, integration and dissolution; Dvaṃdva-s, countless pairs of opposites; three Guṇa-s, three attributes of matter and three functions of mind; three states of consciousness, Jāgrat-svapna-suṣupti, waking-dreaming-slumbering; three bodies of man; three worlds; the laws of Karma and Punar-janma; Puṇya and Pāpa, right and wrong, merit and sin, virtue and vice; three Ṛṇa-s, congenital debts; four Āsrama-s; four Varṇa-s; and the four Puruṣārtha-s, ends of life, which make life intelligible and purposeful to us.¹

¹ This is an addition from the pen of Dr. Bhagavān Dās to the original work in the present edition.

PART III

ETHICAL TEACHINGS



CHAPTER I

ETHICAL SCIENCE, WHAT IT IS

SCIENCE is a definitely arranged body of knowledge, of facts related to each other. A collection of facts does not make a science; the facts must be systematically arranged in their relations to each other, and the principles underlying these relations must be known, before the collection can be called a science. ETHICAL means that which relates to conduct, to the way in which rational beings should behave towards each other as well as towards other creatures. When, therefore, we speak of Ethical Science, we do not mean a list of virtues and vices, but we mean a definite and systematically arranged series of facts of conduct in their proper relations to each other and of the underlying principles of these relations.

Another word for Ethics is morality, right conduct, and in order to know what is right we have to understand something about man and his surroundings.

The object of morality is to secure the welfare of all beings, and this is done by showing men, through the science of Conduct, how to live in harmony with each other and with their surroundings. Īsvara is Love, and wills the happiness of His universe, is gradually bringing about universal happiness. This does not mean that a right thing always is pleasant, and a wrong thing always unpleasant, for the time ; but it means that the conduct which leads to lasting happiness, to the bliss of union with Īsvara, to Mokṣa in the end, is good, "As the wheels of the cart follow the ox, so misery follows sin," and so also happiness follows righteousness. The fruit of wrong-doing may be sweet to the taste in the eating, but it is poison, and brings about bitter pain afterwards, and sometimes long-continued disease. The boy who does wrong because it gives him a short pleasure is like the ignorant child who plucks and eats the sweet gaily coloured poison-berries that make him in the evening writhe in pain. It is the duty of the teacher of morality to mark every sin as "Poison."

आचारलक्षणो धर्मः सन्तस्त्वाचारलक्षणाः ।

आगमालां हि सर्वेषामाचारः श्रेष्ठ उच्यते ॥

आचारप्रभवो धर्मो धर्मादायुर्विवर्धते ।

आचाराल्लभते ह्यायुराचाराल्लभते श्रियम् ॥

आचारात्कीर्त्तिमाप्नोति पुरुषः प्रेय चेह च ॥¹

“The mark of Dharma is Ācāra (good conduct). Ācāra is the mark of the good. Higher than all teachings is Ācāra. From Ācāra is Dharma born, and Dharma enhances life. By Ācāra man attains life. By Ācāra he attains fame, here and hereafter.”

आचारः परमो धर्मः श्रुत्युक्तः स्मार्त एव च ।

तस्मादस्मिन्सदा युक्तो नित्यं स्यादात्मवान्द्विजः ॥

एवमाचारतो दृष्ट्वा धर्मस्य मुनयो गतिम् ।

सर्वस्य तपसो मूलमाचारं जगद्भुः परम् ॥²

“Ācāra is the highest Dharma, declared by the S'ruti and the Smṛti. Therefore let the twice-born that knoweth the Self ever diligently engage therein.

“Thus beholding the path of Dharma issue from Ācāra, the sages embraced Ācāra as the root of all Tapas.”

प्रभवार्थाय भूतानां धर्मप्रवचनं कृतम् ।

यः स्यात्प्रभवसंयुक्तः स धर्म इति निश्चयः ॥

धारणाद्धर्म इत्याहुर्धर्मेण विधृताः प्रजाः ।

यः स्याद्धारणसंयुक्तः स धर्म इति निश्चयः ॥

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Anusāsana-parvan, civ.

² *Manu-smṛti*, i, 108, 110.

अहिंसाऽर्थाय भूतानां धर्मप्रवचनं कृतम् ।

यः स्यादहिंसया युक्तः स धर्म इति निश्चयः ॥ ¹

सर्वेषां यः सुहृन्नित्यं सर्वेषां च हिते रतः ।

कर्मणा मनसा वाचा स धर्मं वेद जाजले ॥ ²

“For the well-being of all beings was Dharma declared. That only which bringeth such well-being is Dharma. This is sure.

“Because it supporteth and holdeth together it is called Dharma. By Dharma are the people upheld. That which upholdeth is alone Dharma. This is sure.

“For the making harmless of beings was Dharma declared. That which secureth preservation of beings is Dharma. This is sure.

“He who is the friend of all beings; he who is intent on the welfare of all with act and thought and speech—he only knoweth Dharma, O Jājali.”

न कुर्यात्कर्हिचित्सङ्गं तमस्तीव्रं तितीरिषुः ।

धर्मार्थकाममोक्षाणां यदत्यन्तविघातकम् ॥

तत्रापि मोक्ष एवार्थ आत्यन्तिकतयेष्यते ।

त्रैवर्ग्यो ऽर्थो यतो नित्यं कृतान्तभयसंयुतः ॥ ³

“He who wishes to cross beyond this intense darkness, let him not attach himself too much to

¹ *Maha-bharata*, Karṇa-parvan, lix.

² *Ibid.*, Śānti-parvan, cclxii, 9.

³ *Viṣṇu-bhāgavata*, IV, xxii, 34, 35.

anything, for (such attachment) is the great frustrator of Dharma (religion, etc), Artha (wealth), Kāma (pleasure), and Mokṣa (emancipation).

“Of these (four) too, Mokṣa is the truly ultimate end, for the other three are ever haunted by the fear of Death, the Ender.”

धर्मं चार्थं च कामं च यथावद्वृत्तां वर ।

विभज्य काले कालज्ञः सर्वान्सेवेत पण्डितः ॥

मोक्षो वा परमं श्रेय एषां राजन्सुखार्थिनाम् ।¹

“The wise man, O best of speakers, that knoweth the proper times, serveth Dharma, Artha and Kāma, all three evenly, dividing his time between them (on the Pravṛtti-mārga, the path of outgoing).

“But, O King, all beings desire happiness, and Mokṣa (belonging to the Nivṛtti-mārga, the path of return) is the highest good for them.”

¹ *Maha-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, xxxiii, 42, 43.

CHAPTER II

THE FOUNDATION OF ETHICS AS GIVEN BY RELIGION

WE have already seen that the first proclamation of Religion is "The Self is One." There are indeed many selves in appearance, but they are all portions or reflections of the One. Their separateness is temporary, their unity is eternal. Many pots may be dipped into a tank, but the water that fills each is the same water. Many upādhi-s are dipped into the ocean of existence, but the life that fills each is the same life. This primary truth of religion is the foundation of Ethics.

We must, then, in our Ethical Science recognise the unity of the Self. But this is not enough, for in unity there is neither "I" nor "You," and we have seen that our science deals with relations between "I" and "You." So we must also recognise the "diversity of the Not-Self;" that means that there are many upādhi-s of matter, and in each separate upādhi there is a part, or reflection, of the One Self. There are innumerable bodies,

innumerable minds, and these bodies and minds come into relations with each other. There can never be right relations until each separate mind and body act to other minds and bodies on the principle that they are at root one, that what helps all is the only thing that really helps each, and that what injures one really injures all. In hurting another we are really hurting ourselves. If a hand cut the foot belonging to its own body, the blood would flow from the foot, not from the hand ; but presently the hand would grow weak, for the blood circulates in the whole body and there is only one supply for all parts of the body. So also with men ; and if one man wounds another, the wounder suffers as much as the wounded, only the suffering takes longer in making itself felt.

This, then, is the foundation of right conduct, as seen by the Reason. Boys have at first to take moral precepts on the authority of great Sages and Saints, as taught in the S'āstra-s, because they have not the power nor the time to think them out for themselves. But they can, in their manhood, verify these precepts, given in the Sanātana-dharma, by applying their Reason to them.

The One Self is in all beings ; every Jivātman is a portion, or reflection, of the One Self. Let this principle sink deeply into every heart, and let each remember that he who injures another injures

himself. Sayeth S'rī Kṛṣṇa : " I am the Self, O Guḍākeśa, seated in the heart of all beings ; I am the beginning, the middle, and also the end of beings." ¹

एको देवः सर्वभूतेषु गूढः सर्वव्यापी सर्वभूतान्तरात्मा ।

कर्माध्यक्षः सर्वभूताधिवासः साक्षी चेता केवलो निर्गुणश्च ॥ ²

" One God hideth in all beings. He pervadeth all. He is the inmost Self of all beings. He superviseth all actions. He is the resting-place of all beings. He is the Witness, the Consciousness, the One above limitations and qualities."

एकस्तथा सर्वभूतान्तरात्मा रूपं रूपं प्रतिरूपो बभूव । ³

" This one universal Inner Self of all beings becometh one separate individual self for each form."

यस्तु सर्वाणि भूतान्यात्मन्येवानुपश्यति ।

सर्वभूतेषु चात्मानं ततो न विजुगुप्सते ॥

यस्मिन्सर्वाणि भूतान्यात्मैवाभूद्विजानतः ।

तत्र को मोहः कः शोक एकत्वमनुपश्यतः ॥ ⁴

" He who seeth all beings in the Self, and the Self in all beings, he shrinketh no more (from any, in dislike).

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā* x, 20.

² *Svetāśva-taropaniṣad*, vii, 2.

³ *Kaṭhōpaniṣad*, v, 10.

⁴ *Īsopaniṣad*, 6, 7.

“He in whose consciousness, full of perfected knowledge, all beings have become the Self—in him, thus beholding the unity, there is no more any delusion nor any sorrow.”

सर्वभूतस्थमात्मानं सर्वभूतानि चात्मनि ।

ईक्षते योगयुक्तात्मा सर्वत्र समदर्शनः ॥¹

“The self, harmonised by yoga, seeth the Self abiding in all beings, all beings, in the Self ; everywhere he seeth the same.”

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, vi, 29.

CHAPTER III

RIGHT AND WRONG

THESE two words, Right and Wrong, are in the mouth of everybody, but it is not everybody who can tell us exactly what he means by right and wrong. Let us try to understand.

We have seen that we have specially to do with three worlds, the Tri-lokī, and we know that the Tri-lokī is created by Brahmā, preserved by Viṣṇu, and dissolved by Ś'iva. Let us think of a new Tri-lokī.¹ It is a going forth ; many forms appear, and grow and develop ; they become more and more different ; they involve into separate individuals ; they grow by the experiences they meet ; they develop their bodies and minds by taking all they can from outside and working it up into themselves. This is called the Pravṛtti-mārga, the path of going forth, on which the Jīvātman is building himself up into a separate individual, by taking all he can from outside, and making a strong intellect, a powerful "I." When this is complete, the Jīvātman has to

¹ See pp. 77, 78.

learn that he himself is only a part or reflection of a much greater "I," the Īsvara, and that all his powers can only bring happiness if used as a part of that greater "I." Then he begins to see the Unity under the diversity, and turns away from his little separate self to realise the One Self ; he tries to give to all that are weaker than he is, to share with himself in other bodies and minds what he has accumulated in his own. This is called the Nivṛtti-mārga, the path of return, on which the Jīvātman is seeking to realise himself as one with all by sharing all he has with all who need.

These two paths make up what is called evolution, and along this road of evolution the Will of Īsvara, in His aspect of Viṣṇu, is guiding His universe. To work with this Will is Right ; to work against it is Wrong.

Now the world, as a whole, is at the turning point where the Pravṛtti-mārga changes to the Nivṛtti-mārga. Most people are still on the Pravṛtti-mārga, but their way onwards, their higher evolution, lies along the Nivṛtti-mārga. Hence right conduct consists of the desires, thoughts and actions that help oneself and others to tread the Nivṛtti-mārga, the path that leads to Union. We must aim at decreasing separateness, at increasing unity ; all that lessens separateness, and leads towards unity is Right ; all that increases separateness and leads

away from unity is Wrong. But for animals, savages, and backward, undeveloped Jīvātman-s, whose individuality is still very weak, separateness has still to be aimed at, and what is right or wrong for the more advanced is not yet right or wrong for them. This is what is meant by saying that morality is relative. It is related to our position in evolution, to the path we are on.

“Subtle is morality,” Bhīṣma said to Yudhi-ṣṭhira. “I instruct thee not by the letter of the Veda alone, but by the Veda as interpreted by wisdom and experience. None may accomplish his course through the world aright with the help of a morality that is one-sided. The text of the Scripture should be applied with careful exercise of judgment, otherwise it faileth grievously. Uśanas spake this truth in time of old, that Scriptures are no Scriptures if they cannot stand the test of reason. The presence of a knowledge that is full of doubts is no better than its absence. A morality that is based on words without regard to special circumstances leads to error. In a time of long-continued famine, the Ṛṣi Viśvā-mitra took forbidden meat from a caṇḍāla, and compelled the Deva-s to take their customary share from that same meat offered in sacrifice, and thus to justify his act. Forgiveness befits the Saṁnyāsin; it does not always befit the King. The King may forgive injuries to himself.

He may not overlook the slightest wrong done to the meanest of his subjects, if he wish himself and his country well. The sin that attaches to the killing of a person that should not be killed is equal to the sin of not slaying one that deserves to be slain. The King should ever exact with firmness, yea, severity, from all his subjects their respective duties. If he does not do this, then will they prowl about unchecked, like wolves, murdering the weaker and devouring each other. It has been sung of old : 'She alone is a wife that speaketh pleasantly. He alone is a son that maketh his sire happy. He alone is a friend who may be safely trusted. That, verily, is the motherland wherein living is earned.' He alone is a King who ruleth strictly without oppression, in whose territories the righteous have no fear, who cherisheth the poor and punisheth the wicked." ¹

The Āsrama-s and the Varna-s were given in order to shew people what kind of virtues they should aim at, in the particular place and time in which they find themselves, and thus to help on their orderly evolution. As all men have not the power nor the time to find out for themselves the Will of Īsvara, the S'āstra-s have been given to tell us of that Will, and so to help us in distinguishing between Right and Wrong. But some general rules

¹ *Maha-bharata*, S'ānti-parvan, cxxxix, and cxli, cxlii.

have also been laid down in the sacred books, by Vyāsa and by others, for application in cases in which the details are not clear or specific, and therefore the special rules, given in the S'āstra-s, not easy or necessary to apply. Such are :

“ To give joy to another is righteousness ; to give pain is sin.

“ Let not any man do unto another any act that he wisheth not done to himself by others, knowing it to be painful to himself. And let him also purpose for another all that he wisheth for himself.

“ Let not any one do an act that injureth another, nor any that he feeleth shame to do.

“ Let him not do to another what is not good for himself.”

मुखाभ्युदयिकं चैव नैःश्रेयसिकमेव च ।

प्रवृत्तं च निवृत्तं च द्विविधं कर्म वैदिकम् ॥

इह चामुत्र वा काम्यं प्रवृत्तं कर्म कीर्त्यते ।

निष्कामं ज्ञानपूर्वं तु निवृत्तमुपदिश्यते ॥

प्रवृत्तं कर्म संसेव्य देवानामेति साम्यताम् ।

निवृत्तं सेवमानस्तु भूतान्यत्येति पञ्च वै ॥¹

“ Of two kinds is the karma mentioned in the Veda-s, Pravṛtta and Nivṛtta, leading to joys or leading to that (happiness) than which there is no higher.

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, xii, 88, 89, 90.

“Karma done under personal desire (for gain), here or hereafter, is Pravṛtta-karma; done without such desire, under guidance of perfected knowledge (of right and duty) is Nivṛtta.

“Doing Pravṛtta-karma man evolves into the condition of Deva-s. Performing Nivṛtta he rises to beyond the five Bhūta-s.”

अन्ये कृतयुगे धर्मास्त्रेतायां द्वापरे उपरे ।

अन्ये कलियुगे नृणां युगहासानुरूपतः ॥ ¹

“Different are the dharma-s in Kṛta-yuga; different in Tretā and Dvāpara; different again are the dharma-s of men in Kali-yuga—changing according to the changes of the cycles.”

यतः प्रवृत्तिर्भूतानां येन सर्वमिदं ततम् ।

स्वकर्मणा तमभ्यर्च्य सिद्धिं विन्दति मानवः ॥

श्रेयान्स्वधर्मो विगुणः परधर्मात्स्वनुष्ठितात् ।

स्वभावनियतं कर्म कुर्वन् नाप्नोति किल्बिषम् ॥

ईश्वरः सर्वभूतानां हृद्देशे ऽर्जुन तिष्ठति ।

भ्रामयन्सर्वभूतानि यन्त्रारूढानि मायया ॥

तमेव शरणं गच्छ सर्वभावेन भारत ।

तत्प्रसादात्परां शान्तिं स्थानं प्राप्स्यसि शाश्वतम् ॥ ²

“He from Whom is the emanation of beings, by Whom all this is pervaded, by worshipping

¹ *Maha-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, ccxxxi, 27.

² *Bhagavad-gītā*, xviii, 46, 47, 61, 62,

Him in his own karma, man winneth perfection.

“Better is one’s own dharma, though destitute of merits, than the well-executed dharma of another. He who doeth the karma laid down by his own nature incurreth not sin.

“Īsvara dwelleth in the hearts of all beings, O Arjuna, moving all beings by his Māyā, as though mounted on a wheel.

“Flee unto Him for shelter with all thy being, O Bhārata; by His grace thou shalt obtain supreme peace, the everlasting dwelling place.”

वेदो ऽखिलो धर्ममूलं स्मृतिशीले च तद्विदाम् ।

आचारश्चैव साधूनामात्मनस्तुष्टिरेव च ॥ ¹

“The whole of the Veda is the source of dharma; also the Smṛti and the character of those that know the Veda; also the conduct of the good and the satisfaction of the Self.”

अष्टादशपुराणेषु व्यासस्य वचनद्वयम् ।

परोपकारः पुण्याय पापाय परपीडनम् ॥

यदन्यैर्विहितं नेच्छेदात्मनः कर्म पूरुषः ।

न तत्परेषु कुर्वीत जानन्नप्रियमात्मनः ॥

यद्यदात्मनि चेच्छेत तत्परस्यापि चिन्तयेत् । ²

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, ii, 6.

² *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, cclx, 20, 21, 23.

यदन्येषां हितं न स्यादात्मनः कर्म पौरुषम् ।
अपत्रपेत वा येन न तत्कुर्यात्कथंचन ॥¹

• • • • •
अतो यदात्मनोऽपथ्यं परेषां न तदाचरेत् ।²

[The translations of these sloka-s are given on p. 156].

¹ *Maha-bharata*, Sānti-parvan, cxxiv, 67.

² *Yājñia-valkya-smṛti*, iii, 65.

CHAPTER IV

THE STANDARD OF ETHICS

WE have seen that the general standard by which actions should be judged at the present stage of evolution is Union, although many Jīva-s are not yet arrived at this stage. For the majority we can test each action by asking: Does it promote union? Does it promote separateness? If the answer to the first question is "Yes," the action is Right; if the answer to the second question is "Yes," the action is Wrong. This is why it was said in Chapter I, that morality showed men "how to live in harmony with each other and with their surroundings." To live in harmony is to promote union.

So also when Śrī Kṛṣṇa speaks of Divine and Āsuric properties, we find that he classes as Divine those which promote union, and as Āsuric those which promote separateness. "Fearlessness, cleanliness of life, steadfastness in the yoga of wisdom, alms-giving, self-restraint and sacrifice and the study of the Śāstra-s, austerity and straightforwardness, harmlessness, truthfulness, absence of wrath,

renunciation, peacefulness, absence of crookedness, compassion to living beings, uncovetousness, mildness, modesty, absence of fickleness, vigour, forgiveness, fortitude, purity, absence of envy and pride.”¹ Such virtues draw men together, and are based on the knowledge that all selves are one. On the other hand, see how those He marks as Āsuric, the qualities which drive man apart, promote divisions: “Hypocrisy, arrogance and conceit, wrath and also harshness and unwisdom.”² And his description of the Āsuric type of man shews one who is full of ahaṃ-kāra, egoism and selfishness.³

Let the young student then grasp firmly this distinction between Right and Wrong, and apply it to the guidance of his conduct. In later study he will add much to his thoughts on Right and Wrong, will learn many details, and have to solve many complexities; but this principle, this standard, will remain unaltered, for it is based on evolution, and is in accord with the will of Īsvara.

सर्वेषामपि चैतेषामात्मज्ञानं परं स्मृतम् ।
तद्व्यग्र्यं सर्वविद्यानां प्राप्यते ह्यमृतं ततः ॥

¹ *Bhagavad-gīta*, xvi, 1-3.

² *Ibid.*, 4.

³ *Ibid.*, 7-18.

सर्वमात्मनि संपश्येत्सच्चासच्च समाहितः ।
 सर्वं ह्यात्मनि संपश्यन्नाधर्मे कुरुते मनः ॥
 आत्मैव देवताः सर्वाः सर्वमात्मन्यवस्थितम् ।

एवं यः सर्वभूतेषु पश्यत्यात्मानमात्मना ।
 स सर्वसमतामेत्य ब्रह्माभ्येति परं पदम् ॥¹

“Of all these things, the knowledge of the Self is the highest.. It is the foremost of the sciences, for immortality is attained thereby.

“Let him with collected mind see in the Self both the Real and the Unreal. Thus beholding all in the Self, he turneth not his mind towards a-dharma.

“The Self is all the Deva-s; all resides in the Self. . . .

“He who thus seeth the Self in all beings, by his own Self, he realiseth the equality of all and attaineth to the supreme state of Brahman.”

CHAPTER V

VIRTUES AND THEIR FOUNDATION

WE have already seen that mutual sacrifice, another name for mutual service, is enjoined by the Sanātana-dharma, and it is easy to see that this is Right, since it promotes union. Thus the five daily sacrifices promote union between the sacrificer and Ṛṣi-s, Deva-s, Pitṛ-s, Men and Animals. Another way in which the Sanātana-dharma teaches us to do right is by explaining to us the three debts that we owe; the debt to the Ṛṣi-s, paid chiefly in the Brahma-carya Āsrama, by study and by service of the teacher; the debt to the Pitṛ-s, the Ancestors, paid chiefly in the Gārha-sthya Āsrama, by rearing a family and by charity; the debt to the Deva-s, paid chiefly in the Vāna-prastha Āsrama, by sacrifice and meditation.

A debt is something we owe; we have received and should repay. This payment of debt, of what is due, is called the discharge of duty, that which we owe to others, which we *ought* to do. The discharge of a duty is called a virtue; the non-discharge of a duty is called a vice. A virtuous man

recognises his duties, his obligations, and fulfils them; a vicious man does not recognise nor fulfil them.

Virtues have also been called by Bhīṣma "forms of Truth,"¹ because Truth is that which is Real, is indeed, as Bhīṣma says, "the eternal Brahman."² Truth is the Divine Nature, and we see this in the reflection of Brahman that we call external Nature. For all the laws of Nature are expressions of Truth, and work with perfect accuracy and changelessness. Now the greatest Truth of all is, as said before, the unity of the Self amidst the diversity of the Not-Self. All other truths and laws are such only because they are reflections, copies, of this great unity in diversity. And the form which this great Truth takes in Ethical Science is that each one of us should feel for other selves as for himself, should feel himself to be the same as, or at least similar to, other selves; and, so feeling, we must always tell the truth, because to tell a falsehood to another is to regard him with distrust, to regard him as separate from, or even opposed to oneself, to prevent him from sharing with oneself in a common knowledge, which should be the same for all when all are as one. From the setting up of this separation by untruthfulness, consciously or unconsciously, endless

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Śānti-parvan, clxii.

² *Ibid.*

harm results and vices arise. This description of the nature of virtues as forms of Truth corresponds again with our standard of Ethics, for truthfulness promotes union, while untruthfulness increases separateness.

Truthfulness has always been a marked characteristic of the noble characters described in Hindu literature. "My lips have never uttered an untruth," is a favourite phrase of the Heroes. S'rī Kṛṣṇa promised not to carry arms on Kuru-kṣetra, and when He ran towards Bhīṣma with uplifted whip to help Arjuna, Arjuna refused His help because of His promise.¹ So also Yudhi-ṣṭhira, though almost despairing of victory, would not take His help, because of that same promise.² On the other hand, we read that when Yudhi-ṣṭhira for a moment in his utmost need forgot his truthfulness, and told a lie to the undoing of Droṇa, his war-chariot lost the power that upraised it from the earth and it sank to the ground.³ When the Pāṇḍava-s were yet in the forest, and S'rī Kṛṣṇa suggested that Yudhi-ṣṭhira might send an army against the Kuru-s, thus breaking the spirit of the promise that they would remain thirteen years in exile, Yudhi-ṣṭhira's answer was: "The sons of Pāṇḍu swerve not from the path

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Bhīṣma-parvan, lix.

² *Ibid.*

³ *Ibid.*, Droṇa-parvan, cciii.

of truth.”¹ Even when loss follows, the pledged word must be kept. When Prahāda took the sovereignty of the three worlds from Indra, Indra disguised himself as a Brāhmaṇa and served him as his disciple. At last Prahāda was so pleased with him, that he offered to give him anything he asked for. Indra asked for Prahāda’s “S’īla,” character, manner, behaviour, and Prahāda gave it, though he feared it meant his own ruin—as indeed it did—because he had pledged his word.²

And who can forget Bhīṣma’s splendid answer, when his step-mother Satya-vatī prayed him to take the throne and marry, against his promise: ‘I would renounce the three worlds, the empire of heaven or anything that may be still greater, but truth never will I renounce. Earth may renounce its scent, water may renounce its moisture, light may renounce its power of showing forms, the air may renounce its susceptibility to touch, the sun may renounce his glory, fire his heat, the moon his cool rays, space its capacity to generate sounds, the slayer of Vṛttra his prowess, the God of justice his impartiality, but I renounce not truth.’³

Karṇa, the man of fire, the man of pride, the man of headlong straightforwardness, was born, the

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, clxxxi.

² *Ibid.*, Sānti-parvan, cxxiv.

³ *Ibid.*, Ādi-parvan, ciii.

ancient story says, with a natural armour that no weapons could pierce through. The Deva-s, ever working that the cause of the Pāṇḍava-s might prevail, were sorely anxious lest in the predestined combat between Karna and Arjuna, the latter should fail because of that strong armour. It was Karna's rule that he sat facing the east every day, studying the Veda-s, till the sun turned the zenith, and he had vowed that during that period of his Veda-study every day, whatsoever a Brāhmaṇa asked of him that he had to give, he would give to him un-failingly; and one day Indra, the King of the Deva-s, seeing no other way, took on the semblance of an aged Brāhmaṇa and appeared before Karna and said he had a boon to ask. And Karna said that he would surely give it, if it were at all within his power. Then Indra said: "Give me this armour that you wear by nature on your body." Karna replied: "I know thee now to be no artless Brāhmaṇa, but the King of the Deva-s himself, disguised to help the cause of the Pāṇḍava-s. But even the letter of my given word must be respected. Take what thou askest, though in giving thee thy wish I know I give my life, and what is even more than life to me, the only chance of conquering my soldier-rival, Arjuna, in battle!" And Karna hewed off that living armour piece by piece with his own hand and sword, and gave it all to Indra, winning

thereby a longer life and a far nobler name than it he had defeated Arjuna.¹

King Dasa-ratha, of the Solar Race of Kings, asked by the Deva-s for help against the Asura-s, battled against the latter as a Kṣattriya should. His youngest wife, Kaikeyī, drove his war-chariot, and when the king sank into a swoon under his wounds, she skilfully bore him away on the chariot to a place of safety and preserved his life. For that deed the grateful King promised her two boons, which she put by for future need. Long afterwards, when the King was in his old age and wished to instal his eldest son, Rāma, as the heir-apparent, she claimed the boons, and claimed them fearfully: Rāma, eldest born and best beloved of the aged King, noblest of men, should wander forth into the forests as an exile, and the crown be placed on the head of Kaikeyī's son, Bharata. Dasa-ratha, knowing well that it was death to him to grant the boons, yet granted them and died. Better far that he should die, than that the King's word be broken, and truth slain.²

Bali, the Daitya king, had conquered Svarga and become unchallenged ruler of the three worlds. The rites of a great sacrifice, the sacred Asva-medha, were spread out at his command. Vāmana, Viṣṇu

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, ccciii-cccix.

² *Ramayana*, Ayodhya-kāṇḍa.

disguised as a dwarf, came to the sacrifice and begged as boon as much land as He could cover in three paces. S'ukra, the preceptor of Bali, bade him refuse to carry out his gift, since Vāmana was Viṣṇu. Bali answered : " The grandson of Prahlāda shall never speak untruth. I will give to this Brāhmaṇa boy what I promised, even if he be Viṣṇu and my enemy." And when Vāmana had covered the Tri-lokī with two paces and demanded a third foothold, Bali offered his own head, and took as favour the loss of all his kingdom. And for this Viṣṇu blessed him, declaring : " His wealth gone, his position lost, himself overpowered and chained by enemies, forsaken by friends, reviled and cursed by his own preceptor, Bali forsook not truth." ¹ The purāṇa-s say that for such acts of truth, by the blessing of Viṣṇu, Bali will be the next Indra, when the present Deva, whose proper name is Puraṇ-dara, vacates that office (for Indra is the title of the great office of the sovereign of the divine kingdom, not a personal name).

As truth is Brahman, those who seek Brahman must be truthful. Above and beyond all else, therefore, a boy should strive for truthfulness.

¹ *Viṣṇu-bhāgavata*, VIII, xv-xviii.

जायमानो ब्राह्मणस्त्रिभिर्ऋणैर्ऋणवाञ्छायते यज्ञेन देवेभ्यः प्रजया
पितृभ्यः स्वाध्यायेन ऋषिभ्यः ॥¹

“The Brāhmaṇa, being born, is born a debtor with three debts : to the Deva-s by sacrifice, to the Ancestors by progeny, to the Ṛṣi-s by study.”

ऋणानि त्रीण्यपाकृत्य मनो मोक्षे निवेशयेत् ।

अनपाकृत्य मोक्षं तु सेवमानो ब्रजत्यघः ॥

अधीत्य विधिवद्वेदान्पुत्रांश्चोत्पाद्य धर्मेतः ।

इष्ट्वा च शक्तितो यज्ञैर्मनो मोक्षे निवेशयेत् ॥²

“After having discharged the three debts let him turn his mind to Mokṣa. He who desireth Mokṣa, without having discharged them falleth downwards.

“Having studied the Veda-s duly, having produced offspring lawfully, having offered sacrifices to the best of his power, let him turn to Mokṣa.”

परस्परं भावयन्तः श्रेयः परमवाप्स्यथ ॥

एवं प्रवर्तितं चक्रं नानुवर्तयतीह यः ।

अवायुरिन्द्रियारामो मोघं पार्थ स जीवति ॥³

“Nourishing one another ye shall reap the supremest good. . . .

¹ Veda text quoted by Kullūka in his commentary on *Manu-smṛti*, vi, 36.

² *Manu-smṛti*, vi, 35-36.

³ *Bhagavad-gītā*, iii, 11-16.

"He who on earth doth not follow the wheel thus revolving, sinful of life and rejoicing in the senses, he, O Pārtha, liveth in vain."

सत्यं सत्सु सदा धर्मः सत्यं धर्मः सनातनः ।
 सत्यमेव नमस्येत सत्यं हि परमा गतिः ॥
 सत्यं धर्मस्तपो योगः सत्यं ब्रह्म सनातनम् ।
 सत्यं यज्ञः परः प्रोक्तः सर्वं सत्ये प्रतिष्ठितम् ॥

सत्यं नामाव्ययं नित्यमविकारि तथैव च ।
 सर्वधर्माविरुद्धेन योगेनैतदवाप्यते ॥
 सत्यं च समता चैव दमश्चैव न संशयः ।
 अमात्सर्यं क्षमा चैव ह्रीस्तितीक्षा ऽनसूयता ॥
 त्यागो ध्यानमथार्यत्वं धृतिश्च सततं दया ।
 अहिंसा चैव राजेन्द्र सत्याकारास्त्रयोदश ॥¹

"Truth is ever the (one) dharma of the good. Truth is the Sanātana-dharma. Bow only to the Truth. Truth is the final way. Truth is dharma. Truth is tapas. Truth is the eternal Brahman. Truth is the highest sacrifice, for all is founded on and upheld by Truth. . . .

"Truth is the name of That which is Unperishing, Unchanging, Eternal. It is attained by the Yoga-meditation that opposeth not any dharma.

¹ *Maha-bharata*, S'ānti-Parvan, clxi, 4, 5, 10, 8, 9.

“Truthfulness, equality (impartiality) self-control, absence of envious emulation, forgiveness, modesty, endurance, absence of jealousy, charity, thoughtfulness, disinterested philanthropy, self-possession, and unceasing and compassionate harmlessness—these are the thirteen forms of Truth.”

चत्वार एकतो वेदाः साङ्गोपाङ्गाः सविस्तराः ।

स्वधीता मनुजव्याघ्र सत्यमेकं किलैकतः ॥¹

“The four Veda-s on the one side, well studied together with all their aṅga-s and upāṅga-s (are far out-weighed by) Truth alone on the other.”

आत्मन्यपि न विश्वासस्तथा भवति सत्सु यः ।

तस्मात्सत्सु विशेषेण सर्वः प्रणयमिच्छति ॥²

“Men place less trust in themselves than in the true. Hence all wish to secure the friendship of the true.”

सतां सदा शाश्वतधर्मवृत्तिः सन्तो न सीदन्ति न च व्यथन्ति ।

सतां सद्भिर्नाफलः संगमो ऽस्ति सद्भ्यो भयं नानुवर्तन्ति सन्तः ।

सन्तो हि सत्येन नयन्ति सूर्यं सन्तो भूमिं तपसा धारयन्ति ।

सन्तो गतिर्भूतभव्यस्य राजन्सतां मध्ये नावसीदन्ति सन्तः ॥³

“The true and the good act ever according to the Eternal Dharma. The true fail not, nor are

¹ *Maha-bharata*, Vana-parvan, I, xiii.

² *Ibid.*, ccxcvii, 42.

³ *Ibid.*, 47, 48.

cast down ; never fruitless is contact with the true ; the true feel no fear from the true. The true guide the Sun by the power of Truth ; the true uphold the Earth by the power of self-denial. The true are the guides of the past and the future. O King, the true never suffer in the midst of the true."

यतः प्रभवति क्रोधः कामो वा भरतर्षभ ।
शोकमोहौ विधित्सा च परासुत्वं च (तद्वद्) ॥
लोभो मात्सर्यमीर्ष्या च कुत्सा ऽसूया ऽकृपा भयम् ।

त्रयोदशैते ऽतिवलाः शत्रवः प्राणिनां स्मृताः ॥ ¹

" Anger, lust, dejection, delusion, cynicism, wrongful activity, greed, envy, jealousy, irritated worry, sullen hate or malice, scorn and fear—these thirteen (vices and forms of untruth) O king, are the powerful enemies of living creatures."

यस्य विद्वान्हि वदतः क्षेत्रज्ञो नाभिश्ङ्कते ।
तस्मान्न देवाः श्रेयांसं लोके ऽन्यं पुरुषं विदुः ॥ ²

" The Deva-s know not a better being in the universe, than him of whom the all-knowing Witness feeleth no doubt when he speaketh."

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, clxi, 1—3.

² *Manu-smṛiti*, viii, 96.

कर्मण्येवाधिकारस्ते मा फलेषु कदाचन ।

मा कर्मफलहेतुर्भूर्मा ते सङ्गो ऽस्त्वकर्मणि ॥¹

“Thy business is with the action only, never with its fruits; so let not the fruit of action be thy motive, nor be thou to inaction attached.

ऋतं सत्यं परं ब्रह्म ।”

“The Supreme Brahman is the Right, is the Truth.”

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, ii, 47.

² *Nṛ-siṃhottara-tāpiny-upaniṣad*, i, 6.

CHAPTER VI

BLISS AND EMOTIONS

WE have seen that Īsvara is Thought, Power and Bliss, and man, as His child, has also these characteristics. When the Jīvātman becomes wrapped in dense matter, the aspect of his nature which is Bliss, is ever going outwards in search of satisfaction, trying to realise itself by uniting itself with the outer world. The impulses outwards are called desires, and when they unite the Jīvātman to an object that gives him pleasure, so that he desires to be again united to such an object, the resulting emotion is called love, or liking. When, on the contrary, they unite the Jīvātman to an object that gives him pain, so that he desires to avoid union with such an object again, the resulting emotion is called hate, or dislike. The first makes an attraction between the Jīvātman and the object; the second makes a repulsion.

The Jīvātman thinks over these likes and dislikes, and gradually trains himself to direct his emotions.

rightly; emotions thus guided by reason in accordance with the will of Īsvara develop into Virtues, and thus the culture of the emotions forms the ethical development of man. As he cultivates the emotion called love he unites himself to an ever-widening circle of beings, the family, the community, the nation, the race, loving them as himself and this love becomes a continually increasing expression of the Bliss aspect of his nature, which finds satisfaction in union.

We have seen that evolution is now leading us towards union, or, in other words, that the will of Īsvara is guiding the separated selves towards union with each other and with Himself. In this union is Bliss; therefore the Right and the Happy are inseparable. Over and over again the Sanātana-dharma leads us to this one conclusion. "Brahman is bliss" therefore the Jīvātman, being of the nature of Brahman, is also bliss, and unhappiness only arises when he goes against evolution, against the great Will, goes, in a word, wrong.

ब्रह्मैवेदं सर्वं सच्चिदानन्दरूपं सच्चिदानन्दरूपमिदं सर्वम् ।¹

"All this is Brahman—Sac-cid-ānanda; Sac-cid-ānanda is this all."

¹ *Nṛ-siṃhottara-tāpiny-upaniṣad*, 7.

परास्त्रि खानि व्यतृणत्स्वयंभूस्तस्मात्पराङ् पश्यति नान्तरात्मन् ।¹

“The Self-born pierced the senses outwards; therefore (the Jīva) looketh outwards and not (towards) the inner Self.”

यदा वै सुखं लभते ऽथ करोति नासुखं लब्ध्वा करोति सुखमेव लब्ध्वा करोति. . . ।

यो वै भूमा तत्सुखं नाल्पे सुखमस्ति भूमैव सुखम् ।
यत्र नान्यत्पश्यति नान्यच्चृणोति नान्यद्विजानाति
स भूमा अथ यत्रान्यत्पश्यत्यन्यच्चृणोत्यन्यद्विजानाति
तदल्पं यो वै भूमा तदमृतमथ यदल्पं तन्मर्त्यम्. . . ।²

“When (the Jīva) obtaineth pleasure, then he engageth in action; never doth he enter on action without having obtained pleasure; only when he hath obtained pleasure doth he engage in action.

“That which is infinite, that is (the true pleasure) happiness; there is no happiness in the finite. This infinite alone is happiness.

Where (the Self) seeth not another, heareth not another, knoweth not another (than the Self), that is the Infinite. Where (the Self) seeth, heareth, knoweth another (than the Self), that is the finite. That which is infinite is immortal; that which is finite is mortal.”

¹ *Kāṭhōpaniṣad*, iv, 1.

² *Chāndo-gyōpaniṣad*, VII, xxii, 1; xxiii, 1 and xxiv, 1.

सुखचैतन्यस्वरूपो ऽपरिमितानन्दसमुद्रो ऽविशिष्टसुखस्वरूपश्चानन्द इति ।¹

“Joy and consciousness, a limitless ocean of joy, than which there is no greater happiness—such is Ānanda.”

इष्टविषये बुद्धिः सुखबुद्धिरनिष्टविषये बुद्धिर्दुःखबुद्धिः ।²

“The consciousness of pleasure is the consciousness of an object desired ; the consciousness of pain is the consciousness of an object undesired.”

सर्वाणि भूतानि सुखे रमन्ते सर्वाणि दुःखस्य भृशं त्रसन्ते ॥³

“All beings revel in pleasure ; all shrink greatly from pain.”

इच्छाद्वेषसमुत्थेन द्वंद्वमोहेन भारत ।

सर्वभूतानि संमोहं सर्गे यान्ति परंतप ॥⁴

“By the delusion of the pairs of opposites, O Bhārata, sprung from attraction and repulsion, O slayer of foes, all beings walk this world, wholly deluded.”

इच्छा द्वेषः सुखं दुःखं संघातश्चेतना धृतिः ।

एतत्क्षेत्रं समासेन सविकारमुदाहृतम् ॥⁵

¹ *Sarva-sāropaniṣad*.

² *Ibid.*

³ *Mahā-bhārata*, Śānti-parvan, ccxxxi, 227.

⁴ *Bhagavad-gītā*, vii, 27.

⁵ *Ibid.*, xiii, 6.

“ Desire, aversion, pleasure, pain, the compound (organism), intelligence, firmness, these, briefly described, constitute the Field and its changes.”

काम एष क्रोध एष रजोगुणसमुद्भवः ।¹

“ It is Kāma (desire) and it is Krodha (anger), arising out of Rajas.”

इन्द्रियस्येन्द्रियस्यार्थे रागद्वेषौ व्यवस्थितौ ।
तयोर्न वशमागच्छेत्तौ ह्यस्य परिपन्थिनौ ॥²

“ Affection and aversion for the objects of sense abide in the senses ; let none come under the dominion of these two ; they are obstructors of the path.”

रागद्वेषवियुक्तैस्तु विषयानिन्द्रियैश्चरन् ।
आत्मवश्यैर्विधेयात्मा प्रसादमधिगच्छति ॥³

“ But the disciplined self, moving among sense-objects with senses free from attraction and repulsion, mastered by the self, goeth to peace.”

यः शास्त्रविधिमुत्सृज्य वर्तते कामकारतः ।
न स सिद्धिमवाप्नोति न सुखं न परां गतिम् ॥⁴

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, iii, 37.

² *Ibid.*, 34.

³ *Ibid.*, ii, 64.

⁴ *Ibid.*, xvi, 23.

“ He who, having cast aside the ordinances of the S’āstra-s, followeth the promptings of desire, attaineth not to perfection, nor happiness, nor the highest goal.”

एको वशी सर्वभूतान्तरात्मा एकं रूपं बहुधा यः करोति ।

तमात्मस्थं ये ऽनुपश्यन्ति धीरास्तेषां सुखं शाश्वतं नेतरेषाम् ॥ ¹

“ The One Who controlleth all, the inmost Self of all beings, Who maketh many forms of one form—they who see That One in the Self, only to those rulers of intelligence belongeth the Eternal Happiness, none else.”

¹ *Kāṭhōpaniṣad*, v, 12.

CHAPTER VII

SELF-REGARDING VIRTUES

WE have seen that the Jivātman is related to all around him, and that Ethics is concerned with making his relations with others harmonious. But we must not forget that he is most closely related to his own kosa-s, or bodies, the parts of the Not-Self that he has most closely united to himself, and that unless he is in harmonious relations with these, he can hardly hope to be in harmonious relations with the bodies that are further away from him. While he is young, these bodies of his master him, and lead him into all sorts of trouble ; as he grows older, he begins to try to master them, and many a hard fight he has with them, before he develops the great virtues called self-control—the control of the lower selves by the higher Self, of the bodies by the Jivātman. Virtues that belong to these bodies, considered by themselves, rather than in connection with the relations between different Jivātman-s, are called self-regarding in modern classifications. But

every one can see that a person who has these virtues will promote harmonious relations with others much more than one who has them not.

Manu, the great law-giver, lays much stress on the necessity for this self-control, and gives some most valuable advice about it. He says that action has three forces behind it, and that each of these must be mastered. "Action is born of mind, speech and body."¹

The mind—the *Mano-maya-kosa*, which includes the emotions—must be conquered. This is the hardest task of all. For the mind runs after the objects of desire, swayed and controlled by the longings to possess the objects which promise to give pleasure. The emotions are ever craving satisfaction, and the mind seeks to gratify them, becoming their slave. The *Jīvātman* must free the mind from this slavery, and subdue it for his own service, making it the master of the senses and the sense-organs: as Manu says: "In conquering this (the mind) the two sets of five become conquered."² The "two sets of five" are the ten *Indriya*-s, that is, the five *Jñānendriya*-s and the five *Karmendriya*-s.

Let the student, then, aim at ruling his mind; if it runs to evil things let him call it black; let him allow it to fix itself only on good things. This

¹ *Loc. cit.*, xii, 3.

² *Loc. cit.*, ii, 92.

is the first, the most difficult, the most essential part of self-control.

The control of speech is the next step ; we must think before we speak. Hasty speech leads us into endless troubles. Arjuna was often very hasty in his speech, and so got himself into many difficulties ; as in his hasty vow to slay himself if he did not kill Jayad-ratha, the slayer of his son, before sunset, thus necessitating the interference of S'rī Kṛṣṇa, who shrouded the sun prematurely to induce Jayad-ratha to come out from his shelter.¹ So again in his quarrel with Yudhi-ṣṭhira, provoked by Yudhi-ṣṭhira's taunting speech,² and on other occasions. Nay, his failure to keep a hasty vow led to his death on the Great Journey : " Arjuna said he would consume all our foes in a single day. Proud was he in his heroism, but he did not what he boasted. Hence has he fallen down." ³ He who has conquered his tongue is near to self-mastery.

Thirdly, the physical body must be controlled, and not be allowed to hurry us into sin for its gratification. Says S'rī Kṛṣṇa : " Worship of the Deva-s, the twice-born, the guru-s and the wise, purity, straightforwardness, chastity and harmlessness, are called the austerity of the body." ⁴ Youth

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Droṇa-parvan.

² *Ibid.*, Kārṇa-parvan, lxx-

³ *Ibid.*, Mahā-prasthānika-parvan.

⁴ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xvii, 14.

is the time for conquering the body, for it is then most easily subdued, and set in the right way. For the body is a creature of habit and though at first, it will oppose the will of the Jīvātman with great energy, a little perseverance makes it give way, and then it goes as contentedly and readily along the new road as it did along the old.

Among the sources of evil and of sorrow that we should strive to get rid of by this self-control is selfish desire, for out of the insatiable desire for material wealth and material pleasures grow many miseries, and peace arises from the absence of these desires and not by their continued gratification. Thus Mañki found. For, greedy of wealth, Mañki had searched for it long, but ever he seemed doomed to disappointment. With the last remnant of his property he bought a pair of calves to train up for the plough. But fate ordained that the cord with which the two were tied should get entangled with a passing camel, so that both were killed. This last mischance opened the heart of Mañki, so that desire fled thence unconfined, and Mañki burst forth into song: "He that desires happiness must renounce desire. Well did S'uka say that of these two—the one who gets all that he wishes and the one who casts off every wish—the latter, who renounces all, is surely much superior to the former, for none can ever attain to the end of all desires. Do thou, O

my soul, so long a slave to greed, taste now for once the joys of freedom and tranquillity. Long have I slept, but I shall sleep no longer ; I shall wake. No more shalt thou deceive me, O Desire. Whatever object thou didst fix my heart on, that didst thou force me to follow, heedless, never pausing to enquire if it were easy or impossible to gain. Thou art without intelligence. Thou art a fool. Ever unsatisfied, thou burnest like a fire, always lambent for more offerings. Thou art impossible to fill, like space itself. Thy one wish is to plunge me into sorrow. This day we part. From this day, O Desire, I live no longer in thy company. I think no more of thee or of thy train. I cast thee off, with all the passions of my heart. I, who was harassed with despair before, have now attained to perfect peace of mind. In full contentment of the heart, senses at ease, shall I live henceforth on what comes to me, and labour no more for the satisfaction of thy wishes, O my foe. Casting off thee and all thy train, I gain at once instead tranquillity and self-restraint, forgiveness and compassion and deliverance." Thus Mañki lost a little, and gained all.¹

Hear also the story of King Yayāti, who driven mad by wild desire, took from his own son his fair and splendid youth to strive to fill therewith the ever-gaping maw of Desire the insatiable. For thus the story runs :

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, clxxvii.

King Yayāti, son of Nahuṣa, of the Lunar Dynasty of Kings, was over-fond of the pleasures of sense and fell into sin, which brought upon him the wrath of his father-in-law, the great Ṛṣi S'ukra, the priest of the Titan-Kings. Because of that wrath King Yayāti was suddenly struck with shrivelled and tottering old age in the very midst of his glorious prime of manhood. He propitiated the Ṛṣi, and S'ukra, taking pity on him, decreed that he could exchange, for a thousand years, his age and feebleness for the health and youth of any of his sons, who should consent willingly to the exchange. Yayāti asked his five sons in succession; the fifth and youngest Puru, for love and reverence of his father, gave him his own youth and took from him his age for the period of a thousand years. For that long period King Yayāti assiduously pursued the pleasures of the senses, endeavouring to exhaust the luxuries of the world of matter. But ever he found that his craving grew, even when his senses dulled with satiation. He longed in vain that his longing for the world of sense should be exhausted by fulfilment. As one spoke of a wheel running after another spoke of it, the chase was endless. At the last, as the thousand years approached their close, a great vai-rāgya arose in his mind, and he saw that desire ceases not with satisfaction but with frustration. He called Puru to him, took back his own old

age with gladness, and gave to him his youth together with the kingdom, and retired into the forests chanting the verse that summed up all his life-experience :

“ Desire may not be quenched by enjoyment of its objects ; it only increases manifold therewith, as fire with libations of butter.”¹

Let us pause a moment on the word “ harmless-ness,” in the above quotation of S’rī Kṛṣṇa’s words, p. . “ Harmlessness is the highest Dharma,” Bhīṣma taught. We should injure nothing. Our life should be a source of help, not of harm. The control of the body includes this abstention from injuring others. As said Bṛhas-pati : “ That man who practises the religion of universal compassion, achieves the highest good. . . . One should never do that to another which one regards as injurious to one’s own self. This, in brief, is the rule of righteousness.”²

People often harm others in more thoughtlessness, and so bring about much trouble. When Yudhiṣṭhira and Dur-yodhana and their brothers were boys and all lived and studied together, Bhīma, who was the strongest of them all, often indulged in practical jokes and rough horse-play, exercising his great strength with boyish thoughtlessness upon

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Ādi-parvan lxxv, 50.

² *Ibid.*, Anusāsana-parvan, cxiii.

the younger and weaker boys. When a number of them climbed up into a tree to pluck the fruit, he would take the trunk between his hands and shake the tree, till the little boys tumbled down like ripe fruits. Bhīma thought it was great fun and laughed ; but some of the boys were hurt, hurt in body, and what was worse, hurt in mind. Again, when they were out bathing and swimming in the river that flowed beneath the walls of Hastinā-pura, Bhīma would swim underneath the other boys, and, catching hold of a number of them, would dive into the water, and hold them there till they were almost drowned, while his own greater lung-capacity helped him efficiently against similar distress. He delighted in this, but the others were agonised. What was the consequence ? A smouldering fire of repulsion and dislike, that later on grew into a blazing fire of hate that consumed Kaurava and Pāṇḍava alike. The boyish thoughtlessness of Bhīma was one of the chief causes of the Great War. It is true that unless the combustibles are there, the spark will not kindle the fuel ; unless the tissues are tainted, the microbe will not develop the disease ; still it is our duty to guard against such a destructive spark, such a death-bringing microbe, as long and as carefully as we can. When thoughtless exercise of strength hurts the weak who cannot retaliate, then the anger, that is born but is not vented, becomes

transformed into what is contemptuously called hate and malice, but is in reality far less to blame than the careless spoliation of the weaker by the stronger. To the superficial eye of one who is himself equally inclined in his secret mind to oppression, such acts may appear blameless or even magnificent. But to the just eye of a true chivalry they will always appear in their real character of meanness and tyranny. And he who studies the Great History carefully knows well that the Pāṇḍava-s were not all to praise, nor the Kaurava-s all to blame.

The triple control of mind, speech and body results in righteousness, in right character expressing itself in right conduct. The man who has thus put himself into right relations with the things nearest to him, his own emotions, mind and body, and has thus partially acquired the virtues classified as "self-regarding" or "egoistic" in western ethical books, is able to practise more effectively those classified therein as "altruistic," those which arise in relation to other living beings.

We have now to study the virtues and vices which arise in the relations between human beings. These are best classified under three heads :

1. The virtues and vices which arise in relation to superiors.
2. The virtues and vices which arise in relation to equals.

3. The virtues and vices which arise in relation to inferiors.

In this way we shall obtain a clear and simple classification of the virtues which make our relations with all around us harmonious, and seeing them distinctly, we can strive to attain them. And we shall also see plainly the vices which make disharmony and can try to avoid them. All the virtues have their root in pure Love, and have Bliss for their fruit; all the vices have their root in personal Hate, and their fruit is Misery.

शुभाशुभफलं कर्म मनोवाग्देहसंभवम् ।

कर्मजा गतयो नृणामुत्तमाधममध्यमाः ॥

मानसं मनसैवायमुपभुङ्क्ते शुभाशुभम् ।

वाचा वाचा कृतं कर्म कायेनैव तु कायिकम् ॥

वाग्दण्डोऽथ मनोदण्डः कर्मदण्डस्तथैव च ।

यस्यैते निहिता बुद्धौ त्रिदण्डीति स उच्यते ॥

त्रिदण्डमेतन्निक्षिप्य सर्वभूतेषु मानवः ।

कामक्रोधौ तु संयम्य ततः सिद्धिं निगच्छति ॥¹

“Karma, that bringeth good or evil fruit, ariseth in the mind, or in speech, or in the body. And

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, xii, 3, 8, 10, 11.

threefold are the paths of men, according to their karma, high or low or middling.

* * * * *

“ This (Jīva) reapeth good or evil, mental with the mind, vocal with speech, and bodily even with the body.

* * * * *

“ The daṇḍa of the speech, the daṇḍa of the mind, the daṇḍa of the act—he who has laid these rods (of rule) over his intelligence he is the Tri-daṇḍin.

“ Having laid these rods (of control over his mind) with respect to all beings, and having conquered lust and anger, (the Jīva) attaineth perfection.

देवद्विजगुरुप्राज्ञपूजनं शौचमार्जवम् ।

ब्रह्मचर्यमहिंसा च शारीरं तप उच्यते ॥

अनुद्वेगकरं वाक्यं सत्यं प्रियहितं च यत् ।

स्वाध्यायाभ्यासनं चैव वाङ्मयं तप उच्यते ॥

मनःप्रसादः सौम्यत्वं मौनमात्मविनिग्रहः ।

भावसंशुद्धिरित्येतत्तपो मानसमुच्यते ॥¹

“ Worship given to the Deva-s, to the twice-born, to the teachers and to the wise, purity, straightforwardness, continence and harmlessness—are called the austerity of the body.

“ Speech causing no annoyance, truthful and beneficial, the practice of the study of the Scriptures, are called the austerity of Speech.

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, xvii, 14, 15, 16.

“Mental happiness, equilibrium, silence, self-control, purity of nature—this is called the austerity of the mind.”

न जातु कामः कामानामुपभोगेन शाम्यति ।
हविषा कृष्णवर्त्मैव भूय एवाभिवर्धते ॥ ¹

“Not by the enjoyment of the objects of desire doth desire abate ; rather it increaseth again, as fire with libations of butter.”

असंशयं महाबाहो मनो दुर्निग्रहं चलम् ।
अभ्यासेन तु कौन्तेय वैराग्येण च गृह्यते ॥
यतो यतो निश्चरति मनश्चञ्चलमस्थिरम् ।
ततस्ततो नियम्यैतदात्मन्येव वशं नयेत् ॥ ²

“Without doubt, O mighty-armed, the mind is hard to curb and restless. But, O son of Kuntī, it may be curbed by constant practice and by dispassion.

“As often as the wavering and unsteady mind goeth forth, so often, reining it in, let him bring it under the control of the Self.”

अभ्यासे ऽप्यसमर्थो ऽसि मत्कर्मपरमो भव ।
मदर्थमपि कर्माणि कुर्वन्सिद्धिमवाप्स्यसि ॥ ³

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Ādi-parvan, lxxv. 50

² *Bhagavad-gītā*, vi, 35, 26.

³ *Ibid.*, xii, 10.

“ If also thou art not equal to constant practice, be intent on My service. Performing actions for My sake, thou shalt attain perfection.”

नित्यो नित्यानां चेतनश्चेतनाना-
मेको बहूनां यो विदधाति कामान् ।
तमात्मस्थं ये ऽनुपश्यन्ति धीरा-
स्तेषां शान्तिः शाश्वती नेतरेषाम् ॥¹

“ That which is the Eternal of all eternal, That which is the Life of all lives, That which being One inspireth many with desires—the wise that behold that One seated within themselves, to them alone belongs the lasting peace, unto none else.”

गोत्रजः सहजशत्रुरित्यसौ
नीतिरस्तु धनलोभदुर्धियाम् ।
वृद्धतुल्यलघुपुंवृतं जग-
द्धीधनस्य पितृमित्रपुत्रवत् ॥²

“ The kinsman is the congenital foe—such is the view of those whose minds are blinded by the greed of wealth. To him whose wealth is wisdom, the world, that is filled with his elders, equals and youngers, is (as a world of) parents, friends and children.”

¹ *Kaṭhop.*, v, 13.

² *Mahā-bhārata*, Udyoga-parvan, ii, 17.

अविजित्य य आत्मानममात्यान्विजिगीषते ।
 अमित्रान्वा ऽजितामात्यः सो ऽवशः परिहीयते ॥
 आत्मानमेव प्रथमं द्वेष्यरूपेण यो जयेत् ।
 ततो ऽमात्यानमित्रांश्च न मोघं विजिगीषते ॥¹

“He that, without having conquered himself, wisheth to conquer his ministers, or that, without having conquered his ministers, wisheth to conquer his foes, he faileth helplessly.

“But he that conquereth himself first, as his own foe, and thereafter conquers his ministers and his foes, (his work) is not vain.”

धर्मस्य विधयो नैके ये वै प्रोक्ता मनीषिभिः ।
 स्वं स्वं विज्ञानमाश्रित्य दमस्तेषां परायणम् ॥
 दमं नैःश्रेयसं प्राहुर्वृद्धा निश्चितदर्शिनः ।
 ब्राह्मणस्य विशेषेण दमो धर्मः सनातनः ॥
 अदान्तः पुरुषः क्लेशमभीक्ष्णं प्रतिपद्यते ।
 अनर्थाश्च बहूनन्यान्प्रसृज्यात्मदोषजान् ॥
 आश्रमेषु चतुर्ष्वर्हदममेवोत्तमं व्रतम् ।
 तस्य लिङ्गानि वक्ष्यामि येषां समुदयो दमः ॥
 क्षमा धृतिरहिंसा च समता सत्यमार्जवम् ।
 इन्द्रियाभिजयो दाक्ष्यं मार्दवं ह्रीरचापलम् ॥
 अकार्पण्यमसंरम्भः संतोषः प्रियवादिता ।
 अविहिंसा ऽनसूया चाप्येषां समुदयो दमः ॥²

¹ *Mahā-bharata*, Udyoga-parvan, cxxix, 28, 29.

² *Ibid.*, Sānti-parvan, clviii, 6, 7, 13-16.

“Not one (but many are) the branches of dharma that have been declared by the wise, each resting upon his own knowledge. But Dama (self-control) is the basis of them all.

“The elders, the seers of the sure, have declared that Dama leadeth to the Highest ; especially for the Brāhmaṇa is Dama the (whole of) Sanātana-dharma.

“The man that is not self-controlled meeteth suffering everywhere ; and many troubles he causeth, all arising out of his own defects.

“For all the four Āsrama-s, Dama is the highest vow. I shall declare to thee the marks thereof, the characteristics, of which Dama is the source :

“Forgiveness, self-possession, harmlessness, equability, truthfulness, straightforwardness, the conquest of the senses, skill, gentleness, modesty, restfulness, absence of scorn, absence of excitement, sweet speech, harmlessness, and absence of jealousy—of all these is self-control the source.”

धृतिः क्षमा दमो ऽस्तेयं शौचमिन्द्रियनिग्रहः ।

धीर्विद्या सत्यमक्रोधो दशकं धर्मलक्षणम् ॥ ¹

“Self-possession, patience, self-control, integrity, purity, restraint, intelligence, learning, truthfulness, absence of anger—these ten are the marks of dharma.”

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, vi, 92.

अहिंसा सत्यमस्तेयं शौचमिन्द्रियनिग्रहः ।

एतं सामासिकं धर्मं चातुर्वर्ण्ये ऽब्रवीन्मनुः ॥ ¹

“Harmlessness, truth-speaking, refraining from theft, control of the senses—such is the essence of the dharma that Manu declared for all the four castes.”

सत्यमस्तेयमक्रोधो ह्रीः शौचं धीर्धृतिर्दमः ।

संयतेन्द्रियता विद्या धर्मः सर्व उदाहृतः ॥ ²

“Truthfulness, absence of theft, absence of anger, modesty, purity, intelligence, self-possession, self-control, restraint of the senses, learning—this is declared to be the whole of dharma.”

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, x, 63.

² *Yājñia-vaikya-smṛti*, iii, 66.

CHAPTER VIII

VIRTUES AND VICES IN RELATION TO SUPERIORS

LOVE which is unselfish prompts us to make sacrifices for others, and to restrain ourselves for the common good ; therefore such love is the root of virtues, of the qualities that promote union. So also hate prompts us to take from others, to grasp at all desirable things for our own separate enjoyment to the injury of others ; therefore hate is the root of vices, of the qualities that promote separateness. Moreover, when we make a sacrifice for one we love, we feel happiness in making it, and we thus learn that the deepest happiness, real bliss, lies in giving, which is the joy of the Jīvātman, and not in taking, which is the joy of the bodies.

Let us see how love impels a man to act in relation to his superiors, to those to whom he looks up. A man's superiors are : God, Sovereign, Parents, Teachers, and the Aged.

Love to God shows itself as *Reverence*, *Devotion*, *Worship* and *Submission* to His Will. We find all lovers of God show these virtues. See how

Bhīṣma reverences and worships S'rī Kṛṣṇa, the Avatāra of Viṣṇu, at the Rāja-sūya sacrifice of Yudhi-ṣṭhira: Bhīṣma bids them offer the first arghya to Him, and Nārada declares that "He who approveth not the worship offered unto Kṛṣṇa, the oldest One in the universe, deserveth neither soft words nor consideration. Those men that will not worship Kṛṣṇa, with eyes like lotus-petals, should be regarded as dead though moving."¹ And so also, when Bhīṣma lay dying, he was thinking "of Kṛṣṇa in mind, word and act," and his one thought was to receive His blessing;² he closed the great exhortation with the recital of "the thousand names of Vāsu-deva," and his last words, ere bidding all farewell, asked S'rī Kṛṣṇa's permission to depart.³

In Prahlāda, the son of the Daitya King Hiranya-kasipu, we have one of the most famous examples of devotion. Despite all his teachers could say, he steadily prayed to and praised Hari. In vain did his father threaten him and seek to kill him; the wild elephant who should have trampled on him failed to injure; the rocks that should have crushed him lay light as down on his bosom; the sword that should have struct off his head fell blunted from his neck; the poison that should have carried death

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sabhā-parvan, xxxviii, 8.

² *Ibid.*, Sānti-parvan.

³ *Ibid.*, Anusāsana-parvan, cxlix.

along his veins proved harmless as water ; and at last Nara-siṃha, the Avatāra, burst from the granite pillar, and delivered Hari's servant from the tyrant who sought to slay.¹

Dhruva, leaving his father's palace to flee from the unkindness of his step-mother, shows such fervour of devotion and such courage and steadfastness in worship, that Hari appears to him, and gives him as throne the pole-star, on the boundary of the Tri-lokī, whereon he lives and reigns.²

Nothing, perhaps, is more marked in the perfect human character of Rāma-candra, than His unwavering submission to the Divine Will. Over and over again during the whirl that followed His sudden exclusion from the throne, He calms those around Him by reminding them that all that happens is by the good law, and He Himself is utterly unshaken by the storm, knowing the Real amid all changing unrealities.

On the other hand, we read constantly of the overthrow of those who do not honour the Supreme Lord. Mighty rulers like Rāvaṇa, who was monarch in Laṅkā, fell because they thought themselves rivals of Īsvara, and set themselves against His loving will for the worlds.³ Jarā-saṃdha, the

¹ *Viṣṇu-purāṇa*, I, xvi-xx.

² *Ibid.*, I, xi, xii.

³ *Rāmāyaṇa*, Yuddha-kāṇḍa.

King of Magadha, refusing, though bidden by S'rī Kṛṣṇa to set free the Kings he had captured, was slain by Bhīma; ¹ S'isu-pāla fell before the discus of the Lord he denied; ² Dur-yodhana perished, with his friends and followers, for his persistent rejection of S'rī Kṛṣṇa's counsels; ³ the list might be extended for many pages. Out of all these shines out the warning that those who show hate to Īsvara must perish.

Loyalty to the Head of the State is equally insisted on in the S'āstra-s, not only by direct command but by example. When Yudhi-ṣṭhira is King in Indra-prastha, and his four brothers go out to war, they bring to his feet all the wealth they gained; they fought for their King, not for themselves. ⁴ So when Yudhi-ṣṭhira was exiled after the gambling-match, and the people came out to follow him, leaving their allegiance to Dhṛta-rāṣṭra, the loyal prince bade them return to Hastinā-pura and obey their proper ruler, since only thus could they secure the general prosperity. ⁵

"This loyalty was fostered in the people by the devotion to duty imposed on the King, and by the high ideal of kingship insisted on. Utathya, of the

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, S'alya-parvan, xx.

² *Ibid.*, xl.

³ *Ibid.*, S'alya- and Sauptika-parvan-s and *ante*.

⁴ *Ibid.*, Sabhā-parvan, xxv-xxxiii.

⁵ *Ibid.*, Vana-parvan, i.

race of Aṅgiras, instructing the King Mām-dhātṛ, son of Yuvanāśva, said : “ One becometh a King in order that he may uphold righteousness, and not that he may conduct himself capriciously. The King is the protector of the world, O Mām-dhātṛ ! If he act righteously, he attaineth to the honours of a veritable God upon earth. But if he act unrighteously he sinketh into hell. All creatures rest upon righteousness ; and righteousness, in turn, resteth upon the King. That King alone is a true King who upholdeth righteousness. If he fail to chastise unrighteousness, the Deva-s desert his mansions, and he incurreth obloquy among men.”¹

Patriotism, the love of one's country, and *Public Spirit*, caring for the nation more than for oneself, are virtues that are so closely akin to loyalty that they should never be separated from it. “ King and country ” are the object of true loyalty. No man should be without this love of country and the readiness to sacrifice himself for his native land ; for national greatness cannot exist without patriotism and public spirit, and national greatness means, in the long run, family and individual prosperity : the whole and the part cannot be separated. Public spirit makes a man feel the successes and the sufferings of his country as though they were his own—as indeed they are. It makes him try to protect the

¹ *Maha-bhārata*, S'ānti-parvan, xc.

weak from injustice, to resist wrong, to uphold the law, to stand for justice, to refuse to make unfair profit at the cost of the community or to cheat it by evading what is due to it from himself. The heroes of ancient India are constantly described as "intent on the welfare of others;" S'rī Kṛṣṇa bids Arjuna see "to the protection of the masses," to "the maintenance of mankind."¹ The man who thinks only of himself and of his family is shortsighted, and is really undermining his and their future happiness.

To Parents is due ever the most complete *Obedience*, and this is one of the most often-repeated injunctions of the Sanātana-dharma. See how Rāmacandra, the Great Example, obeys his father. When Daśa-ratha is inveigled into granting Rāma's exile and the son is told by Kaikeyī that His father fears to speak his will: "Speak, O honoured lady, the desire of the King," is His quick reply, "and I will carry it out. There is no service greater than service of the father, than carrying out his words." And to all arguments counselling resistance, He gives the steadfast answer: "There is no power in me to transgress my father's order. . . . I shall abide by my father's orders."² And later, when His father was dead, and Bharata, most unwilling regent, held

¹ *Bhagavad-gītā*, iii, 20-25.

² *Rāmāyaṇa*, Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa, xv-xxx.

His crown in trust, all His answer to Bharata's passionate pleadings that He should ascend the throne was that His father had sent Him to the forest, and had placed Bharata on the throne; each must do his own task, according to the father's word: "What My father hath commanded must not be made untrue."¹

Again we read in the *Mahā-bhārata* the story of the knower of Brahman, shrouded in the impure body of a fowler, who led to his parents the Brāhmaṇa Kausika, who came to learn wisdom at his feet. The fowler took the Brāhmaṇa to the beautiful rooms in which he had housed his aged parents, saying that his own happy state of knowledge and peace was due to his filial piety; having bowed low at their feet he introduced his guest and then told him: "These my parents are the idols that I worship; whatever is due to the Deva-s I do to them. . . . To me they are like the three sacred fires mentioned by the learned; and, O Brāhmaṇa, they seem to me to be as good as sacrifices, or the four Veda-s. . . . The two parents, the sacred fire, the soul, and the guru, these five, O good Brāhmaṇa, are worthy of the highest reverence." He then told Kausika that he had acted wrongly in leaving his parents in his anxiety to learn the Veda-s, and that he should go back to them and console

¹ *Ramāyaṇa*, Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa, xc.

them : " Return to the side of thy father and mother, and be diligent in honouring thy parents, for I do not know if there be any virtue higher than this." ¹

Who does not know how Bhīṣma won the boon, that Death should not touch him until he himself permitted it, by resigning throne and marriage to win for his father the bride for whom, in silence, the father's heart was yearning ? King S'āṃ-tanu, of the lunar race of Kings, wished to marry the beautiful Satya-vatī, but struggled against himself for the sake of his son Bhīṣma. A step-mother, he thought, might not be kind to his beloved son. The care born of the struggle showed on King S'āṃ-tanu's face, and Bhīṣma made enquiry of the ministers and learned the cause. He went to the father of Satya-vatī and asked that she be married to the King. The father said : " The King is aged ; thou shalt shortly reign in his stead. I would rather marry my daughter to thee." But Bhīṣma replied : " Say not such a thing. When my father has wished to marry her, she is my mother already ; give her to the King." Then Satya-vatī's father said : " But I shall do so only if her son succeeds the King in sovereignty." Bhīṣma said at once : " I promise to forego my birth-right. I shall place that younger brother of mine upon the throne." But Satya-vatī's father said again : " We know thy word once

¹ *Maha-bharata*, Vana-parvan, ccxiii-ccxv.

given may not be broken. But what shall bind thy sons from disputing their uncle's right?" Then Bhīṣma said: "I promise never to marry at all; so there shall be no sons to me who may dispute their uncle's right. Now do thou let my father have his wish." And because of his fearful promises the Deva-s cried out with a bodiless voice: "He has been known as Deva-vrata so long; he shall now be known as Bhīṣma—the Terrible"—terrible surely to himself but most loved and most dear to all true Hindu hearts. King S'am-tanu too, when he heard that the vows had been already made and could not now be helped, took Satya-vatī to wife; but in the fulness of his father's love bestowed on Bhīṣma the gift of death at his own will alone. Men that prevail over their passions thus, and can conserve their manhood perfectly, may well prevail against the might of death itself, long as they like.¹

On the other hand, it was Dur-yodhana's stubborn insolence and disobedience to his parents that precipitated the war which destroyed his house.² Over and over again his father pleaded with him to yield to the just demands of the Pāṇḍava-s, and give them a share in their ancestral property, but Dur-yodhana scorned his prayers and persisted in his own way. Even when his mother, Gāṃ-dhārī,

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Ādi-parvan, c.

² *Ibid.*, Udyoga-parvan, cxxx.

begged him in open sabhā to obey his father and to regard his duty, he treated her harshly and disrespectfully, and so brought on his head the doom of failure. No son can succeed who grieves his father or mother by disobedience or by disrespect.

The Teacher is added to the Father and Mother by the Sanātana-dharma, as the third great object of reverence and service, and we see this virtue also in the ancient heroes who should serve as examples to all Hindu boys. How deep is the love, how un-failing the reverence, shown by the Pāṇḍava-s to Bhīṣma, to Droṇa, even when compelled to fight against them; see them bowing at their teacher's feet ere the battle joins on Kuru-kṣetra;¹ and when Dhṛṣṭa-dyumna seized the white locks of Droṇa, hear the agonised cry of Arjuna: "Bring the teacher alive! do not slay him! he should not be slain!" and his heart-broken sob when the crime is complete: "I have sunk into hell, overcome with shame."²

The only valid reason for disobedience to the Guru is held to lie, in the Sanātana-dharma, in previous promise or clear duty. Bhīṣma, the example of dharma, gives a striking illustration of this in his career. After the death of his father Śāntanu, Bhīṣma, in accordance with his vow, placed

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Bhīṣma-parvan, xliii.

² *Ibid.*, Droṇa-parvan, cxci, cxciv.

his younger brother Citrāṅgada on the throne, and when Citrāṅgada was slain in battle, then he placed the second brother Vicitra-vīrya on the throne of Hastinā-pura. Looking for suitable wives for Vicitra-vīrya, Bhīṣma heard that the three daughters of the King of Kāsī were about to hold a Svayaṃ-vara, and were in all respects worthy of marriage with his brother. He went to Kāsī, and by his sole might in battle carried them off from the midst of the assembled candidates for their hands. When he brought them to Hastinā-pura the younger two, Ambikā and Ambālikā, willingly consented to marry Vicitra-vīrya; but the eldest, Ambā, said she wished to marry Sālva, King of another country, having chosen him for husband long before.¹ Bhīṣma sent her with all honour to King Sālva; but he sent her back saying she had been won in battle from him and he could not take her back as a gift. Then Ambā said to Bhīṣma: "If Sālva will not marry me, because you won me from him in battle, then you must marry me yourself." Bhīṣma was greatly distressed for her sake, but in view of his vow of lifelong celibacy could not consent. Then Ambā was very angry and went to Bhīṣma's Guru Parasu-rāma; and Parasu-rāma sided with her and ordered Bhīṣma to marry Ambā. But he declined, deeming the keeping of his vow a

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Ādi-parvan, cii.

higher duty than obedience to his teacher in a wrongful order. And ultimately there was a great battle between Parasu-rāma and Bhīṣma. For many days the single combat lasted, and many wounds were received by both; and more than once they fainted with fatigue and loss of blood and shock of serious wound; but reviving again, they renewed the fight, till on the twenty-eighth day, the aged Parasu-rāma acknowledged that he could do no more; and Bhīṣma won his cause. Yet because however unwillingly, he had brought much sorrow upon Ambā, karma decreed that she should prove the means of his death.

Reverence to the Aged fitly closes the list of virtues which should flower when we come into relation with our superiors, and it was one of the marked characteristics of the ancient Hindu character. The wisdom which is the fruit of long experience is the precious treasure in possession of the aged, and they willingly pour this forth for the benefit of the teachable, courteous, respectful youth. In the hurry of modern life, this respect for the aged is apt to be trampled under foot, and it is the more necessary that care should be taken to cultivate it.

न युज्यमानया भक्त्या भगवत्यखिलात्मनि ।

सदृशो ऽस्ति शिवः पन्था योगिनां ब्रह्मसिद्धये ॥

ज्ञानवैराग्ययुक्तेन भक्तियुक्तेन चात्मना ।
 परिपश्यत्युदासीनं प्रकृतिं च हतौजसम् ॥
 सतां प्रसङ्गान्मम वीर्यसंविदो
 भवन्ति हृत्कर्णरसायनाः कथाः ।
 तज्जोषणादाश्वपवर्गवत्सर्पिनि
 श्रद्धा रतिर्भक्तिरनुक्रमिष्यति ॥
 भक्त्या पुमाञ्जातविराग ऐन्द्रियाद्
 दृष्टश्रुतान्मद्रचनाऽनुचिन्तया ।
 चित्तस्य यतो ग्रहणे योगयुक्तो
 यतिष्यते ऋजुभिर्योगमार्गैः ॥
 असेवया ऽयं प्रकृतेर्गुणानां
 ज्ञानेन वैराग्यविजृम्भितेन ।
 योगेन मय्यर्पितया च भक्त्या
 मां प्रत्यगात्मानमिहावरुन्दे ॥ ¹

“There is no other path to the attainment of Brahman, so auspicious for yogin-s, as devotion towards the Lord who is the Ātman of all.

“With his mind full of wisdom, dispassion and devotion, he seeth Prakṛti losing its power and Puruṣa as stainless.

“Where the good gather, there are heard the stories that give knowledge of My Power, and are as nectar to the ear and heart. Listening to them,

¹ *Viṣṇu-bhāgavata*, III, xxv, 19, 18, 25, 26, 27.

he turneth rapidly to the path of Mokṣa with faith and joy and devotion.

“Turning away with dispassion from sensuous sights and sounds because of devotion to Me, he dwelleth ever in thought on (the mysteries of) My creation, and thus, restraining his mind, essayeth the straight paths of yoga and attaineth union.

“Giving up the service of the attributes of Prakṛti, his knowledge and yoga (realisation of Unity) blossoming with (the help of) vai-rāgya, and his devotion offered unto Me, he realiseth Me as the Pratyag-ātman (the Inmost Self).”

स्वभावमेके कवयो वदन्ति कालं तथा ऽन्ये परिमुह्यमानाः ।
देवस्यैष महिमा तु लोके येनेदं भ्राम्यते ब्रह्मचक्रम् ॥

तमीश्वराणां परमं महेश्वरं तं देवतानां परमं च दैवतम् ।
पतिं पतीनां परमं परस्ताद्विदाम देवं भुवनेशमीड्यम् ॥
न तस्य कार्यं करणं च विद्यते न तत्समश्चाभ्यधिकश्च दृश्यते ।
परा ऽस्य शक्तिर्विविधैव श्रूयते स्वाभाविकी ज्ञानबलक्रिया च ॥
न तस्य कश्चित्पतिरस्ति लोके न चेशिता नैव च तस्य लिङ्गम् ।
स कारणं करणाधिपाधिपो न चास्य कश्चिज्जनिता न चाधिपः ॥
एको वशी निष्क्रियाणां बहूनामेकं बीजं बहुधा यः करोति ।
तमात्मस्थं ये ऽनुपश्यन्ति धीरास्तेषां सुखं शाश्वतं नेतरेषाम् ॥
नित्यो नित्यानां चेतनश्चेतनाना-

मेको बहूनां यो विदधाति कामान् ।

तत्कारणं सांख्ययोगाधिगम्यं

ज्ञात्वा देवं मुच्यते सर्वपाशैः ॥¹

“ From its own nature, some Sages say, others from time arising (came the universe) ; verily from the majesty of God revolves in this world the Brahman-wheel.

“ Him of Īsvara-s the supreme and great Īsvara, Him of Deva-s the supreme Divinity, of Lords the Lord, the greatest of the great, God, the adorable Ruler of the worlds, (Him) we know.

“ He needeth no instrument nor hath aught to do, nor is there any found who is equal or superior to Him ; His supreme energy is self-dependent and manifold, Wisdom, Power and Activity.

“ None in the world is His lord, nor His ruler, nor His cause ; He is the Cause, the Ruler of the rulers of the senses, of Him there is no source, no sovereign.

“ The one Ruler of the many actionless, He maketh manifold the seed ; therefore the wise who perceive Him within themselves, for them is eternal joy, for more others.

“ Eternal of Eternals, Intelligence of Intelligences, One among many, who fulfilleth the wishes of all—having known that Cause, attained by the Sāṃkhya and the Yoga, (man) is freed from all bonds.

¹ *Svetāsva-taropaniṣad*, vi, 1, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13.

अराजके हि लोके ऽस्मिन्सर्वतो विद्रुते भयात् ।
 रक्षाऽर्थमस्य सर्वस्य राजानमसृजत्प्रभुः ॥
 इन्द्रानिलयमार्काणामग्नेश्च वरुणस्य च ।
 चन्द्रवित्तेशयोश्चैव मात्रा निर्हृत्य शाश्वतीः ॥

तस्यार्थे सर्वभूतानां गोप्तारं धर्ममात्मजम् ।
 ब्रह्मतेजोमयं दण्डमसृजत्पूर्वमीश्वरः ॥

दण्डः शास्ति प्रजाः सर्वा दण्ड एवाभिरक्षति ।
 दण्डः सुप्तेषु जागर्ति दण्डं धर्मं विदुर्बुधाः ॥

तस्याहुः संप्रणेतारं राजानं सत्यवादिनम् ।
 समीक्ष्यकारिणं प्राज्ञं धर्मकामार्थकोविदम् ॥
 तं राजा प्रणयन्सम्यक्त्रिवर्गेणाभिवर्धते ।
 कामात्मा विषमः क्षुद्रो दण्डेनैव निहन्यते ॥
 दण्डो हि सुमहत्तेजो दुर्धरश्चाकृतात्मभिः ।
 धर्माद्विचलितं हन्ति नृपमेव सबान्धवम् ॥¹

“For the protection of the whole world God created the King, when the Kingless people were scattered through fear.

“ (He created the King) out of immortal portions taken from Indra, Vāyu, Yama, the Sun, the Fire, Varuṇa, the Moon and the Lord of Wealth.

* * * *

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, vii, 3, 4, 14, 18, 26-28.

“ For him the Lord created His own son Dharma, the Protector of all beings, as the Daṇḍa (Sceptre, or Rod of power) clothed with the Brahman-radiance.

* * * *

“ The Daṇḍa governeth all the people, the Daṇḍa alone protecteth ; the Daṇḍa waketh while others sleep, the wise know the Daṇḍa as Dharma.

* * * *

“ They declare the wielder of Daṇḍa to be the King, that speaketh the truth, acteth after deliberation, is wise, and versed in Dharma, Kāma and Artha.

“ Wielding it righteously, the King increaseth in all three ; but if he be given up to Kāma, unjust and mean, then he himself is slain by the Daṇḍa.

“ A great fire is the Daṇḍa, difficult to be borne by those who have not achieved the Self ; it slayeth, together with his family, the King that strayeth from Dharma.”

तेन धर्मोत्तरश्चायं कृतो लोको महाऽऽत्मना ।

रञ्जिताश्च प्रजाः सर्वास्तेन राजेति शब्दयते ॥ ¹

“ By the great-souled King was this world made full of Dharma and all the people were gladdened ; hence is he called the King.”

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, lviii, 133.

राजा प्रजानां हृदयं गरीयो गतिः प्रतिष्ठा सुखमुत्तमं च ।
 समाश्रिता लोकमिमं परं च जयन्ति सम्यक्पुरुषा नरेन्द्र ॥ .
 नराधिपश्चाप्यनुशिष्य मेदिनीं दमेन सत्येन च सौहृदेन ।
 महद्विरिष्टा क्रतुभिर्महायशस्त्रिविष्टपे स्थानमुपैति शाश्वतम् ॥ ¹

“The King is the inmost heart of his people, he is their refuge, their honour, and their highest happiness; relying on him, they conquer righteously this world and the next.

“The King also, having governed the earth with self-control, with truth, and with the heart of compassion, having sacrificed with many sacrifices, attaineth to fair fame and everlasting seat in Svarga.”

उपाध्यायान्दशाचार्य आचार्याणां शतं पिता ।

सहस्रं तु पितृन्माता गौरवेणातिरिच्यते ॥ ²

“Ten Upādhyāya-s doth the Ācārya exceed and a hundred Ācārya-s the Father; but the Mother exceedeth even a thousand Fathers in the right to be honoured.”

आचार्यश्च पिता चैव माता भ्राता च पूर्वजः ।

नार्तेनाप्यवमन्तव्या ब्राह्मणेन विशेषतः ॥

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, lxvii, 60, 61.

² *Manu-smṛti*, ii, 145.

तेषां त्रयाणां शुश्रूषा परमं तप उच्यते ।

त एव हि त्रयो लोकास्त एव त्रय आश्रमाः ।

त एव हि त्रयो वेदास्त एवोक्तास्त्रयो उग्रयः ॥

सर्वे तस्यादृता धर्मा यस्यैते त्रय आदृताः ।

अनादृतास्तु यस्यैते सर्वास्तस्याफलाः क्रियाः ॥¹

“The Teacher, the Father, the Mother, and an elder Brother must not be treated with disrespect, especially by a Brāhmaṇa, though one be grievously offended (by them).

“The service of these three is declared to be the best austerity.

“For they are declared to be the three worlds, the three orders, the three Veda-s, they the three sacred fires.

“All duties have been fulfilled by him who honours these three ; but to him who honours them not, all rites remain fruitless.”

ऊर्ध्वं प्राणा ह्युत्क्रामन्ति यूनः स्थविर आयति ।

प्रत्युत्थानाभिवादाभ्यां पुनस्तान्प्रतिपद्यते ॥

अभिवादनशीलस्य नित्यं वृद्धोपसेविनः ।

चत्वारि तस्य वर्धन्त आयुः प्रज्ञा यशो बलम् ॥²

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, ii, 225, 229, 230, 234.

² *Ibid.*, ii, 120, 121.

“The vital airs of a young man mount upwards to leave his body when an elder approaches ; but by rising to meet him and saluting, he recovers them.

“He, who habitually salutes and constantly pays reverence to the aged, obtains an increase of four things : length of life, knowledge, fame and strength.

CHAPTER IX

VIRTUES AND VICES IN RELATION TO EQUALS

WE have next to consider our relations with the equals that surround us on every side, and to know what virtues should be developed, what vices avoided, in order to make our home and our outer relations harmonious and happy. Let us first think of those of the home, for they are of primary importance; pure and happy homes, in which family virtues are practised, make the foundation of prosperous States, of successful nations. We have seen the relations that should exist between parents and children, and we must now study those that should be found between husband and wife, between brothers and sisters.

The Hindu books are full of stories of the love that should bind a husband and wife together, or *Conjugal Love*. "Husband and wife are the same,"¹ says Manu; they are one, not two; love makes the

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, ix, 45.

two into one—love protective, sheltering, tender, on the side of the husband ; love yielding, sweet, devoted, on the side of the wife. “ Let mutual fidelity continue until death.”¹ Rāma-candra and Sītā form an ideal husband and wife ; they enjoy all life’s happinesses together, and suffer together all life’s sorrows ; they take counsel together in all perplexities, and share together all difficulties. We see them first in unclouded bliss, Prince and Princess, happy as the day is long ; when the coronation of Rāma-candra approaches, we see them fasting and praying together ; when the shock of the sentence of exile comes, Sītā accepts it carelessly at first caring only for her husband’s presence, and she would go with him, she “ whose heart is wholly thine, knowing not another, ever clinging to thee resolute to die if left by thee.” Thorns would touch her skin like soft linen, dust would be as sandal-powder, grass would serve as blanket, roots and leaves as pleasant food, so long as she was by her husband’s side. “ O Rāma, thy company is heaven, thy absence hell.” Only when he pleads with her to remain behind, does her heart fail her. And when he bids her come she tosses gaily to her attendants all her costly robes and priceless jewels, stripping herself of all that women love, without a sigh, caring only for the joyous

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, ix, 101.

fact that exile could not separate husband and wife. Happy as a girl, she is said to be playing in the forest glades unmindful of the lost royal splendour, since she is, night and day, at Rāma's side. But though so blithe, she yet is wise, and we hear her counselling her husband with grave thoughtful words, as they wander on the outskirts of the forest of Daṇḍakā. When she is carried away by Rāvaṇa, the mighty Rākṣasa, how her husband's love breaks forth in protracted search, in wild outbursts of lament. "Sītā! Sītā!" he cries in his anguish as he searches for her, "art thou hiding, art thou playing? Oh come! Such sport is my death." While he laments and seeks, Sītā is exposed to every temptation to be unfaithful, to every terror and cruel threat. "Devoted to one husband, I will never sin against him. With wealth and riches thou canst not tempt me. As the rays of the sun are his own, so am I Rāghava's alone."¹

And hear the story of Sāvitṛī, who won her husband from the grasp of Yama, King of Death. King Asva-pati, of the Madra lands, obtained a daughter by long worship of the Deva-s. They called her Sāvitṛī. Fair was she as a figure of gold, and sweet as the jessamine flower, and the people worshipped her as a Devī, come to them for their good deeds. When she came of age, her father said

¹ *Rāmāyaṇa paśsim.*

to her : " Choose thou a fitting husband for thyself." And she went forth asearch, with royal retinue. When she returned, after the lapse of many months, the Ṛṣi Nārada was staying with her father ; and in his presence she announced the choice that she had made. " King Dyu-mat-sena of the Sālva country, old and blind and driven from his country by his enemies, lives in a forest, leading a hermit's life. His son, Satya-vat, have I chosen for my spouse." Then Nārada said : " Alas ! O King ! innocent Sāvitrī hath done ill." " Is he not fitting mate for Sāvitrī ? " the King asked Nārada. " Is he weak in mind or body, wanting in forgiveness or in courage ? " Nārada said : " In nothing is he wanting of all this. Strong and radiant as the sun himself is Satya-vat, generous like Ranti-deva, just like S'ibi, magnificent like Yayāti, and beautiful like the moon. But all this wealth of virtues must pass away from the earth within a year. His span of life is very short." With sinking heart Sāvitrī heard the Sage's words, yet said : " But once can a person say ' I give away.' And I have said it once : ' I give myself away to Satya-vat.' I cannot choose again." Nārada said : " Because thy daughter wavers not, O King ! I give my blessing to the marriage ; " and went away.

Swift messengers went to Dyu-mat-sena, and he sent back word to Asvā-pati : " I once myself

desired alliance with thee, but saw not how to ask for it in my fallen state. Now that the blessed Sāvitṛī is coming to me of her own accord, I know for sure that Lakṣmī's self is coming back unto our ancient house." So the marriage came to pass. Joyously Sāvitṛī passed from her palaces to the hermit's cottage. Eagerly she attended to the least wants of her aged father-in-law and mother-in-law, rejoicing to perform the humblest duties of the household, and by her tender ways and loving words enslaved the heart of her husband. But ever underneath all this, the fire of secret agony lighted by the words of Nārada burned within her soul; and ever she counted the days of the prescribed year. At last the hour appointed for the death of Satya-vat was only four days distant. Then she resolved to seek the help of the Deva-s by fast and prayer. And all the three days she fasted, taking not a drop of water. Early she rose on the morning of the fateful day, finished the morning rites, and touched the feet of her elders. All the ascetics dwelling in that forest blessed her on that day, saying that she should never know the pangs of widowhood. And when the time came for Satya-vat to go forth with his axe upon his shoulder into the wood for work, as usual, she made her heart strong and followed him. He asked in wonder why; but she said she wished to go with him that

day; and so they went, beholding the beauties of the hills, the waters, the woods, and the birds and beasts. Then Satya-vat began his daily labours, filled his wallet with fruit and felled dried branches for fuel. But suddenly a faintness came upon him and his head ached greatly, and he said this to Sāvitrī and lay down. Then Sāvitrī placed his head on her lap and sat, with breaking heart, awaiting she knew not what. All at once she beheld a majestic and awe-striking form, dark yet shining, clad in red attire, standing beside her, and gazing with fixed yet flashing eyes at Satya-vat. Gently she placed her husband's head on the ground, stood up and made obeisance. And the form said : " The days of Satya-vat are ended : I am Yama, Lord of Death ; and because he is so virtuous, I have come to take him away myself, rather than send my emissaries as usual." And he drew the Sūkṣma-sarīra of Satya-vat from his fleshy body, and departed with it towards the south. And Sāvitrī also followed. Then Yama said : " Desist, O Sāvitrī ! go back and perform the funeral rites of thy lord. Thou hast discharged thy duty, and come as far behind thy husband as mortal may go." Sāvitrī replied : " Whither my husband goeth, thither I go. This is the eternal law for man and wife. If I have loved my lord with undivided love, if I have served my elders reverently, if there be any power in penances, then be my path unchecked,

out of thy favour, Yama!" And innocently like a little child she repeated the lessons of dharma that her loving elders and her own gentle soul had taught her. "By faithful service, treading household ways, to wisdom have I won and to religious merit. Close not these ways, O Death, depriving me of my gathered fruits." "Wise and reasonable art thou, O Sāvitṛī, and thy words are sweet. Save thy husband's life, I give thee any boon." "His father lives in darkness, gracious King; by thy favour let his eyes once more behold the day." "Fairest of earth's daughters, I grant the boon thou seekest. And now return, O weary earth-born feet, that may not tread the gloomy path of Death." "Where he, my husband, goes, I still must follow. Fruitful is righteous company, O King of Death, and sweet is it to dwell with one like thee. Not fruitless may such fair abiding prove." "Take then a second boon as fruit, O peerless lady, but ask not for thy husband's soul," said Yama. "Give then, O King of mortal worlds, his kingdom to my husband's father, his kingdom rent from him by evil men." "He shall regain his throne," said Yama, "and reign thereon. And now go back, fair dame, nor follow further." But with sweet words and honeyed praises, Sāvitṛī still followed the Lord of Death, and won from him two other boons, one hundred sons for her father, and one hundred for

herself. When the fourth boon was granted, Sāvitrī spoke in praise of righteous living and of high discharge of duty, till Yama, charmed by her eloquence and wisdom, granted her yet another boon, and Sāvitrī quickly claimed her husband's life, since Yama had granted her a hundred sons, and righteousness would be infringed if other were their father save her husband. Thus did a faithful wife win back from Death her husband, and brought to his family prosperity, riches, and length of days, since even Yama, King of Death, is weaker than a pure wife's faithful love.¹

Nor can the Hindu boy forget the story of Damayantī, the wife of Nala. Nala, son of Virasena, and King of the Niṣadha-s, loved Damayantī, daughter of Bhīma, the King of the Vidarbha-s, and Damayantī loved Nala, though they had not met each other, but each had only heard the other's praises as being incomparable upon earth. Now the Svayam-vara of the princess was proclaimed, and thereto went King Nala, and Damayantī chose him to be her husband, although the Deva-s, Indra, Agni, Varuṇa and Yama, were among the suitors for her hand; and Nala and Damayantī lived together in great love for eleven happy years, and two children were born to them. In the twelfth year came Puṣkara, and challenged

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, ccxcii-ccxcviii.

King Nala to play him at dice, and Nala played, and lost again and again, till at length he had lost to Puṣkara his kingdom and all his wealth, even his garments, and went forth an exile, with only one cloth, half covering his body. Then Damayantī, his wife—having sent her children to her father's care when she saw how the games were going—went forth after him, clad also in a single cloth, and in the outskirts of the city they wandered, hungry and athirst. To complete their misery, Nala lost his cloth in the attempt to catch therewith some birds for food, and hopeless and desperate, he wished Damayantī to be spared the suffering of hunger, and repeatedly pointed out to her the road to her former home. But Damayantī, clung to him, weeping, sobbing that she would not leave him, that when he was weary she would soothe him, for in every sorrow there was no such medicine as a loving and faithful wife. Presently, wearied out, she lay sleeping on the bare ground, and Nala argued with himself that it would be kinder to leave her, so that she might seek her relatives, than to keep her wandering in misery with him. Thus thinking, he cut in half, with a sword that was lying near, the cloth she wore, leaving one half around her; and wrapping round himself the other half, he fled from her, mad with grief. The hopeless Damayantī awaking, found herself alone, and

bitter was her grief, more for Nala's loneliness than for her own loss. She sought her husband eagerly, but found him not—found instead a huge serpent, that wrapped her closely in his coils. How she escaped, and what fresh perils befell her ere she found at last shelter as companion to a princess of the Cedi-s, is told at length in the *Nalopākhyāna*. Meanwhile Nala had rescued a snake ringed round with fire, and by the magic of the snake his form was changed and became unrecognisable, and he wandered till he reached the city of King Ṛtu-parṇa, whose charioteer he became. Thus were husband and wife severed, they who loved each other so dearly and so well. Now King Bhīma sent forth Brāhmaṇa-s to search for his daughter and for Nala, and one of them, Su-deva by name, recognised the sad Queen as she sat in the King of Cedi-s' palace, and told her piteous story to the Queen-mother, who proved to be her mother's sister. Then Damayantī, in spite of warmest offers of hospitality, departed to her father's house, and King Bhīma sent out again messengers to seek Nala, charged to bear a message to be uttered loudly in every gathering of men, which in veiled allusions, intelligible to Nala only, prayed him to return to his loving, sorrowing wife. Long they sought, and at last found one who, after hearing the outcried message, spoke sadly of wives whom their husbands

had deserted, and he was called Bāhuka, charioteer of R̥tu-parṇa, King in Ayodhyā. Returning to Damayantī Parṇāda, the messenger, told what had been said, and her quick woman's wit devised a way by which to bring Nala to her side. "Go to King R̥tu-parṇa," she said, "and tell him that Damayantī holds another Svayam-vara on the morrow after thy arrival in Ayodhyā." For she knew that none save Nala could so drive as to reach her father's palace from Ayodhyā within so brief a space. As she planned, so it happened. R̥tu-parṇa bade Bāhuka drive him swiftly to the city of the Vidarbha-s, and Bāhuka, sore at heart, chose swift steeds and drove them, as only he could drive, reaching the city of the Vidarbha-s by that same evening, and there, by Damayantī's tender wiles, he was led to give signs that he was indeed Nala, as she suspected, for he wept over his children when he saw them, and he cooked as only Nala could cook; then she bade them bring Bāhuka into her presence, and husband and true wife recognised each other, and long thereafter lived they in wedded bliss, their kingdom regained, and their children around them.¹

Moreover, a wife who truly loves and serves her husband gains more of inner development and knowledge than she can gain by long austerities

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, līlī-lxxix.

and painful penances. For thus we read in the story of the Brāhmaṇa's wife who angered Kausika. Now the Brāhmaṇa Kausika made great tapas. One day he sat in meditation under a tree, when a crane sitting on a branch befouled his person. He opened his eyes and looked up angrily at the crane; and, such was the psychic power stored in Kausika by his tapas, that the crane was killed by that angry glance as if struck by lightning. Kausika was sad at the death of the crane, and glad also with the pride of tested power. He went into the neighbouring town to beg as usual for his daily meal, and asked the first good housewife that he came across for it. As she was fetching him some food her husband came in, tired with his daily work, covered with dust. Asking Kausika to stay a while, she began to attend to her husband. Some time elapsed and Kausika's impatience grew. When she came back to him at last with the food he needed, he looked at her with angrier eyes than he had looked with at the crane and asked her how she had neglected the Brāhmaṇa for so long. She answered gently: "My duty to my husband is more urgent than to thee. Restrain thy wrath and learn forgiveness, Brāhmaṇa! Look not at me with anger; that will injure thee. I am no crane!" Kausika was thunderstruck and questioned her and she replied: "No penances have I performed to gather

psychic powers ; only served my husband single-mindedly. If thou wouldst learn yet more about the virtues of our simple household duties, go to the fowler of distant Mithilā." Kausika went, with a humbled mind, to Mithilā, and stood at the fringe of the great crowd of customers around the fowler's shop. The fowler saw Kausika, went up to him, and, bowing low to the Brāhmaṇa, said : " I know why the faithful housewife sent thee to me, and shall resolve thy doubts and show thee why I can do so." Then the fowler took Kausika to his home, and showed him his aged parents, as we have already seen.¹

How brothers should show *Brotherly Love* we read in the whole story of the *Rāmāyaṇa*, and it is said that Lakṣmaṇa was like Rāma's life, so dear and close the bond, nor would they sleep apart, nor apart engage in sport ; we see him follow Rāmācandra into the forest, and stand waking on watch while Rāma slept ; we see him sharing in the search for Sītā, ever wise in counsel and loving in sympathy ; and when Lakṣmaṇa lies senseless, arrow-pierced, before Laṅkā, hear Rama's piteous cry : " What have I to do with life and what with war, now Lakṣmaṇa lies wounded on the field of battle ? Why, forsaking me dost thou wander in other worlds ? Without thee, life and victory, nay, Sītā's self, are worthless."

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, ccv.

The whole story of the *Mahā-bhārata* shows how brotherly love and union lead to prosperity and fame; for never do we find the Pāṇḍava-s with warring interests, or leading separated lives. Yudhi-ṣṭhira represents the family, and all the efforts of the younger are directed to his enrichment and his prosperity. For him they fight, and all the wealth they gain is gained for him; for him Arjuna seeks and wins the divine weapons, by sharp tapas and fierce struggles and long and weary wanderings. And equally does Yudhi-ṣṭhira cherish them, regarding their joys and sorrows as his own.

Yudhi-ṣṭhira has risen into Svarga, and looks round on every side to find his brothers and his wife. "I desire to go whither my brothers are gone," he cries again and again, and nowhere, among radiant Deva-s and triumphant Rājā-s, can he see the faces he so dearly loves. "Ye mighty ones!" at last he cries, "what is your heaven to me apart from them? That is heaven where my brothers are. This is not heaven for me." Then the Deva-s bade a heavenly messenger lead forth the King, and take him to the land where now his loved ones lived; and turning their backs on Svarga they went out, and began to tread a path that led into ever-deepening gloom. Darker and darker grew the air, gloomier and gloomier yet the shadowy way. Foul things of nauseous smell and horrid shape

crowded round them as they went, and beneath their feet the ground was slippery with blood, and was strewn with fragments of the corpses of the slain. Sharp thorns and piercing leaves obstructed it, and burning sand, and iron stones white-hot. Astounded, the King questioned his celestial guide, who told him that he had been bidden to lead him thither, but if he were weary, he could return. Slowly, doubtfully, Yudhi-ṣṭhira turned, sure that his brothers could not dwell in region so foul and evil; but as he turned sad cries arose on every hand, and piteous prayers that he would stay a while. "Who are you?" asked the wondering King, and answers sobbed from every side. "I am Karna." "I am Bhīma." "I am Arjuna." "I am Nakula." "I am Saha-deva." "I am Drau-padī." And so with others, dearly loved on earth. "Go back, go back to Svarga," cried the King, wrought to anger by his brothers' wrong; "go back to those who sent you here as guide. Not with them my place, but here, here, where my loved ones dwell. Go thou back to Svarga's barren joys; better with these in pain than there in lonely bliss." And as he spake heaven's fragrance breathed around, and all was balmy air and shining light and thronging Deva-s. For stronger than hell is love, and fidelity than pain.¹

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Mahā-prasthānika-parvan, iii, and Svargāro-hapa-parvan, i.

Among the virtues to be shown outside the family, *Hospitality* stands in the first rank, and how highly it is to be valued may be seen in the story of the half-golden mongoose that attended the great sacrifice of King Yudhiṣṭhira, where all the arches and the stakes and sacrificial vessels were of gold, and whereat all men took as they would of gems and money, none forbidding them. Yet cried the mongoose, that the sacrifice of the wealth there gathered was of less worth than a small measure of powdered barley, given by a poor Brāhmaṇa to his guest. And thus he told the tale. There was a Brāhmaṇa who kept the uñcha vow, and daily lived on the grains of corn he gathered, making one frugal meal a day, he and his wife, with son and daughter-in-law. And a terrible famine laid waste the land and few were the grains left upon the husking-ground by threshers, and ever thinner and thinner grew he and his family, till they were but as living skeletons. One day it happened that he had gathered a little barely, and, having powdered it, the wife divided it into four, that each might have a scanty meal and joyfully they sat down to eat. But ere yet they had touched the little heaps of grain, a guest stood in the doorway, and quickly rising, the Brāhmaṇa brought him in, and gave him water and a seat, and then set before him his own share of the scanty food. The guest ate, but still

was hungry, and the wife brought her share and placed it in her husband's hands that he might put it before the guest. "Shaking art thou with weakness, mother of my son," he said: "keep thou the food and eat, lest my home lose its sunshine." But she pressed on him the food, that the dharma of hospitality might not be broken, and, with a sigh, he took and gave. Yet still the guest was fain for more, and the son brought his meagre share, and the Brāhmaṇa, aching for his son's hunger and the emaciation of his youthful body, laid that third portion before the guest. But, alas! even then the guest was still hungry, for each little share was as nothing for a hungry man, and the young wife's share was now held out to the host's shaking hands, but he drew them back with anguish at his heart. "Not yours, my little one, not yours, not yours." "Father of my son's father," she said, with sweet humility of voice and gesture, "shut me not out from sharing your good deeds. As a Deva is a guest. Feed him, then, from this my food, which is as thine own flesh." Weeping he took, and then with gentle smile laid it before his guest, who took and ate. Then, as the guest rose up, bright light shone out, and in the midst he stood, radiant and splendid; for truly was the guest a Deva, the Lord of Righteousness, Dharma, the strong and pure. And in a few grains that he had left uneaten, the

mongoose rolled, and half his body turned to gold by the magic of that sacrifice, so priceless is the gracious virtue of hospitality, so transforming is its power.¹

A wicked fowler, black in skin like his own deeds of daily murder of innocent birds and beasts, and red in the eyes like his burning malice against his victims, was once overtaken by a terrible thunderstorm in the middle of a forest. The open glades were converted into lakes and the pathways into running streams in a moment. The higher lands to which he tried to find a way were invaded by bears and lions and other fierce denizens of the jungle. Shivering with cold, shaking with fear, he yet refrained not from his cruel habits. Espying a poor she-pigeon lying on the ground, beaten down by the torrents of the rains and frozen with the cold he picked her up and mercilessly thrust her into the cage he carried. Wandering on, he shortly came to a lordly tree that stood in the midst of the forest, and extended a benevolent shade and shelter to myriads of the feathered tribe. It seemed to have been placed there on purpose by the Creator for the good of all creatures, like a good man for the benefit of the world. The fowler took refuge beneath the spreading boughs of the tree. By and by, the clouds dispersed, and the stars shone out. But the fowler

¹ *Māha-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, iv-vi.

was too far away from his home and resolved to pass the night under the tree. As he lay under the tree he heard the he-pigeon lamenting: "Alas! thou hast not yet returned, dear wife! What can have happened to thee? If that dear wife of mine, with her bright rose-eyes, sweet coo, and softest plumes, cometh not back to my nest, my life shall no longer be worth living. The house is not the home, in truth; the wife is the home. She eats when I eat, she bathes when I bathe; she rejoices when I rejoice, and sorrows when I sorrow. Yet if I am angry, she always speaks with sweetness only. Life is empty without such a spouse. Without such, a palace is an empty wilderness. Such a one is a trusted companion and beloved associate in all one's acts of virtue, profit and pleasure. The wife is the richest possession of her lord. She is his one unfailing associate in all the concerns of life. She is the best of medicines for all the diseases of the mind. There is no friend like unto the wife, no refuge better than she."

Hearing the lament of her husband, the she-pigeon caged by the cruel fowler said to herself: "Unlimited is my happiness even in the midst of agony that my husband thinketh thus of me. She is no wife with whom her lord is not content. But we must also think of this poor fowler, overtaken by the cruel storm and kept away from home. He

is now our guest, having taken shelter underneath our abode." And she cried aloud to her husband, explaining the plight of the fowler. The pigeon too, with instant sympathy, forgetting his own sorrows, addressed the fowler: "Welcome to my house as honoured guest, and tell me what to do." The fowler said: "I am stiff with cold; warm me if thou canst." The bird gathered together a heap of dead and fallen leaves; picked up one in his beak, flew and very soon returned with a tiny ember on it from some neighbouring village. In a moment the fowler found himself warmed by a grateful fire, and the bird asked him again for service to be done. The fowler asked for food this time. The bird thought: "I have no stores wherewith to feed him; and yet a hungry guest may not be left unfed." As he reflected deeply, a new light arose within his mind and he cried to his guest: "I shall gratify thee! I have heard in former days from high-souled Ṛṣi-s, and the Deva-s and Pitṛ-s also that there is great merit in honouring a guest. O friend! do thou be kind to me and accept my humble service!" With this he flew around the fire three times and then entered the flames, offering his body to his guest for food.

At that awful act of uttermost guest-honouring, an unknown horror of his own past life on sin seized on the mind of the fowler, tearing up his

evil nature by its deepest roots, and leaving him all shattered. "Thou art my highest teacher, high-souled bird! Thou showest me my duty! From this day I expiate my sins, denying rosy comfort to this sin-fed body, evaporating it with all its crimes by daily fast and tapas, as the strong rays of the summer sun dry up a small and dirty pool. Taught by this example I shall practise righteousness alone henceforth." He threw away his club, his nets and traps and iron cage, and set at liberty the widowed mate of the deceased bird. The she-pigeon thus released, circled round the funeral pyre of her husband, weeping: "Limited are the gifts that the woman receiveth from her father or her mother or her son. But the gifts that the husband giveth to her are limitless! He giveth her his all and all himself! After all these years of happiness with thee, I cannot live alone!" and she threw herself also into the fire.

With a new-born vision the fowler beheld the two ascending to heaven in glorious forms; and the more confirmed in his resolve thereby, he took up his abode in the forest, living a blameless life thenceforward, till the forest-fires, kindled by dried branches rubbing against each other in a summer-storm, consumed his body, as the penance had consumed his sins.¹

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, cxliii-cxlix.

Readiness to forgive wrongs is a sign of a truly noble nature. It is said of Rāma-candra that a hundred injuries left no trace upon his memory, while one benefit was graven there.¹ And listen how Vidura forgot insult and forgave. King Dhṛta-rāṣṭra craved Vidura's help touching the evil conduct of Dur-yodhana, and Vidura counselled his brother wisely but firmly, praying him to enforce on Dur-yodhana his duty of peace with his Pāṇḍava cousins, and to make his supporters win forgiveness from the wronged and exiled princes. At this Dhṛta-rāṣṭra became much incensed, and hotly blamed his righteous brother, accusing him of partiality, and finally of foul disloyalty, adding gross insult to the charge and going from his brother's side in wrath. Then Vidura sadly sought the Pāṇḍava-s, and told how he was sent away with angry words, and counselled them with wisdom, urging urbanity and gentle ways. And after Vidura had gone, King Dhṛta-rāṣṭra repented him of his harshness and injustice, and sent after him to beg him to return, exclaiming: "Go, O Saṃ-jaya, and see if my brother lives, he whom I have driven away in angry madness. Never has he wronged me, nor committed any fault, while I have grievously wronged him. Seek him and bring him hither, Saṃ-jaya, the wise." So Saṃ-jaya

¹ *Rāmāyaṇa*, Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa.

went, wondering whether Vidura, the calm and strong, would pardon his weaker brother's changing moods, and become again the pillar of his throne. And going to the forest, he found Vidura, highly honoured by the princes and by all, and approaching him, prayed him to return. Then Vidura, without hesitating even for a moment, rose and took leave of his royal nephews, and hastened to his elder brother's presence, who prayed forgiveness for the wrong committed. Gently Vidura spoke: "O King, I have forgiven. Worthy of highest reverence art thou, my elder, my superior. Eagerly have I come, longing to see thy face. And if I seemed to favour the sons of Pāṇḍu, it was because a man's heart yearneth over those who are distressed, more from emotion than from reason. Dear are thy sons to me as they, O King, but the sorrows of the latter moved my heart." Thus gently and magnanimously spoke the younger brother, forgetting, as unimportant, the insults he had received.¹

Urbanity is a virtue very characteristic of the old Hindu life. We see the most exquisite politeness in language and in action, as we read how the great ones of the epic poems, good and bad alike, behaved towards guests and friends and foes. Rāma-candra is gentle in speech, and prefaces his

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, As'va-medha-parvan, xcii.

speeches with a kindly smile.¹ Lakṣmī the Devi of Prosperity, speaking of the Dānava-s endued with sweet speech, with friendliness and with forgiveness, declares that She dwelt with them because of their virtues. When they gave way to wrath, and harshness, and unfair dealings, She left them, attended by the Devī-s who abide with Her—Hope, Faith, Intelligence, Contentment, Victory, Advancement and Forgiveness.² So Nārada is said to be sweet-speeched, large-hearted, straight-forward, free from wrath and greed, and therefore everywhere regarded with respect and love.³ Again, Bhīṣma teaches that we should not disparage others by look, word or thought nor speak evil of any; that we should never injure any, nor behave with unfriendliness; that we should pass with indifference opprobrious speeches, and, even when another seeks to anger us, should still speak agreeably, and when slandered, we should not slander in return.⁴ So again Nārada described a Nāga, named Padma, who was walking on the three-fold path of acts, knowledge and devotion, and spoke of him as ever hospitable, practising forgiveness, and abstaining from inflicting injuries. He was

¹ *Rāmāyaṇa*, Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa, i.

² *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, ccxxviii.

³ *Ibid.*, ccxxx.

⁴ *Ibid.*, cclxxviii.

truthful in word and free from malice, kind of speech and seeking the benefit of all. A Brāhmaṇa went to see him, and to learn from him, but on arriving at his house found him absent. His wife hospitably welcomed the stranger, and after exchanging courteous speech with her, he left her and waited patiently on the banks of the river the return of her husband. While waiting there, he did not eat, and the relatives of the absent Nāga, approaching him in great trouble of mind, urged that they were bound to show him hospitality. "The whole community, young and old, is being afflicted, since this thy fast implies that we are negligently leaving unperformed the duties of hospitality." Gently replied the Brāhmaṇa that by their kindly wishes they had fed him, but he could not eat until the Nāga chief returned. Presently he arrived and in his conversation with his wife, we see the duties of the householder; his religion is in doing good to all; all who come as guests must be hospitably entertained; the householder must be gentle, free from wrath and arrogance, must be generous and truthful.¹ Thus of old was taught the duty of the citizen to those around him.

पितृभिर्भ्रातृभिश्चैताः पतिभिर्देवैरेस्तथा ।

पूज्या भूषयितव्याश्च बहु कल्याणमीप्सुभिः ॥

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, ccclvi-ccclxi.

यत्र नार्यस्तु पूज्यन्ते रमन्ते तत्र देवताः ।
 यत्रैतास्तु न पूज्यन्ते सर्वास्तत्राफलाः क्रियाः ॥
 शोचन्ति जामयो यत्र विनश्यत्याशु तत्कुलम् ।
 न शोचन्ति तु यत्रैता वर्धते तद्भि सर्वदा ॥
 जामयो यानि गेहानि शपन्त्यप्रतिपूजिताः ।
 तानि कृयाहतानीव विनश्यन्ति समन्ततः ॥ ¹

“Women must be honoured and adorned by their fathers, brothers, husbands and brothers-in-law, who desire welfare.

“Where women are honoured, there the Deva-s are pleased ; but where they are not honoured, no sacred rite is fruitful.

“Where the female relatives live in grief, the family soon perishes utterly ; but that family in which they are not unhappy prospers ever.

“The houses in which female relatives, not being duly honoured, pronounce a curse, perish completely, as if destroyed by magic.”

एतावानेव पुरुषो यज्ञाया ऽऽत्मा प्रजेति ह ।
 विप्राः प्राहुस्तथा चैतद्यो भर्ता सा स्मृता ऽङ्गना ॥ ²

“This is the extent of the man : his wife, himself and his children ; Brāhmaṇa-s thus declare that the husband and wife are known as the same.”

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, iii, 55-58.

² *Ibid.*, ix, 45.

अन्योन्यस्याव्यभीचारो भवेदामराणन्तिकः ।

एष धर्मः समासेन ज्ञेयः स्त्रीपुंसयोः परः ॥

तथा नित्यं यतेयातां स्त्रीपुंसौ तु कृतक्रियौ ।

यथा नातिचरेतां तौ वियुक्तावितरेतरम् ॥¹

“Let mutual fidelity continue until death ; this may be considered as the summary of the highest law for husband and wife.

“Let man and woman, united in marriage, constantly exert themselves, that they be not disunited nor violate their mutual fidelity.”

तृणानि भूमिरुदकं वाक्चतुर्थी च सूनुता ।

एतान्यपि सतां गेहे नोच्छिद्यन्ते कदाचन ॥

अप्रणोद्यो ऽतिथिः सायं सूर्योदो गृहमेधिना ।

काले प्राप्तस्त्वकाले वा नास्यानश्नन्गृहे वसेत् ॥

न वै स्वयं तदश्रीयादतिथिं यन्न भोजयेत् ।

धन्यं यशस्यमायुष्यं स्वर्ग्यं चातिथिभोजनम् ॥²

“Grass, room, water and fourthly, a kind word ; these are never wanting in the households of the good.

* * * *

“A guest who is sent by the sun in the evening must not be driven away by a householder ; whether

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, ix, 101, 102.

² *Ibid.*, iii, 101, 105, 106.

he have come at a convenient or inconvenient time, he must not stay in the house without entertainment.

“Let him (the householder) not eat any food which he does not offer to his guest ; the hospitable reception of guests procures wealth, fame, long life, and heavenly bliss.”

सत्यं ब्रूयात्प्रियं ब्रूयान्न ब्रूयात्सत्यमप्रियम् ।

प्रियं च नानृतं ब्रूयादेष धर्मः सनातनः ॥ ¹

“Let him speak the truth, let him speak the pleasing, let him not speak an unpleasing truth, nor speak a pleasing falsehood ; this is the ancient law.”

यस्य वाङ्मनसी शुद्धे सम्यग्गुप्ते च सर्वदा ।

स वै सर्वमवाप्नोति वेदान्तोपगतं फलम् ॥

नारुतुदः स्यादार्तो ऽपि न परद्रोहकर्मधीः ।

यया ऽस्योद्विजते वाचा नालोक्यां तामुदीरयेत् ॥ ²

“He whose speech and mind are pure and ever carefully guarded, he obtains all the fruit that is obtained by means of the Vedānta.

“Let him not, even though distressed, cut another to the quick (by his speech) ; nor meditate acts of hostility to others ; let him never utter the malignant word that disturbs (the mind of the hearer).”

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, iv, 138.

² *Ibid.*, ii, 160, 161.

नास्तिक्यं वेदनिन्दां च देवतानां च कुत्सनम् ।

द्वेषं स्तम्भं च मानं च क्रोधं तैक्ष्ण्यं च वर्जयेत् ॥¹

“ Let him avoid unbelief, censure of the Veda-s and slighting of the Deva-s, hatred, obstinacy, pride, anger and harshness.”

नारुंतुदः स्यान्न नृशंसवादी

न हीनतः परमभ्याददीत ।

यया ऽस्य वाचा पर उद्विजेत

न तां वदेदुशर्ती पापलोक्याम् ॥

अरुंतुदं परुषं तीक्ष्णवाचं

वाक्कण्टकैर्वितुदन्तं मनुष्यान् ।

विद्यादलक्ष्मीकतमं जनानां

मुखे निबद्धां निर्ऋतिं वहन्तम् ॥

वाक्सायका वदन्नाशिष्यतन्ति

यैराहतः शोचति रात्र्यहानि ।

परस्य नामर्मसु ते पतन्ति

तान्पण्डितो नावसृजेत्परेषु ॥

न हीदृशं संवननं त्रिषु लोकेषु विद्यते ।

दया मैत्री च भूतेषु दानं च मधुरा च वाक् ॥

तस्मात्सान्त्वं सदा वाच्यं न वाच्यं परुषं क्वचित् ।

पुज्यान्संपूजयेद्दद्यान् च याचेत्कदाचन ॥²

“ Let no one utter cruel words, or wound (with them) the vitals (of another); let none seek to

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, ii, 163.

² *Mahā-bhārata*, Ādi-parvan, lxxxvii, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13.

subdue his enemy by unfair means. Let him not utter that inauspicious speech, belonging to the evil worlds, whereby another is agitated.

“The man that ever wounds the vitals of others, harsh, and sharp of speech, ever piercing other men with the thorns of evil words, he is the man most abandoned of (Lakṣmī) fortune, and ever beareth, bound to his mouth, an evil demon.

“They are verily arrows, these evil words that issue from the mouth ; he who is wounded by them sorroweth night and day, for they wound the vitals. The wise man unlooseth not such (shafts) at others.

“There are no riches in the three worlds like unto these—compassion, friendliness to all beings, charity and sweet speech.

“Therefore ever speak gently and never harshly ; honour the worthy ; give, but ask not.”

क्रुद्धः पापं नरः कुर्यात्क्रुद्धो हन्याद् गुरुनपि ।

क्रुद्धः परुषया वाचा श्रेयसो ऽप्यवमन्यते ॥

आत्मानमपि च क्रुद्धः प्रेषयेद्यमसादनम् ।

एतान्दोषान्प्रपश्यद्विजितः क्रोधो मनीषिभिः ॥⁴

“The man that has given way to anger may commit any sin, he may slay even his elders, or insult those worthy of his reverence with harsh speech :

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, xxix, 6, 7.

“He may send himself to the abode of Death. Beholding these great faults in anger, have the wise ones conquered it.”

किं स्वदेकपदं ब्रह्मन्पुरुषः सम्यगाचरन् ।

प्रमाणं सर्वभूतानां यशश्चैवाप्नुयान्महत् ।

सान्त्वमेकपदं शक्र पुरुषः सम्यगाचरन् ।

प्रमाणं सर्वभूतानां यशश्चैवाप्नुयान्महत् ॥

एतदेकपदं शक्र सर्वलोकसुखावहम् ।

आचरन्सर्वभूतेषु प्रियो भवति सर्वदा ॥¹

“What *one* thing, O Brāhmaṇa (Indra asks of his Preceptor Brhas-pati), if a man shall practise well, shall he become a standard for all beings, and attain to fame widespread ?

“Gentleness is the *one* thing, O S’akra, which if a man will practise unremittingly, he shall become a standard for all beings and attain to fame widespread.

“This one thing, O S’akra, bringeth joy to all the worlds ; practising it towards all beings, the man becometh dear unto all and always.”

यस्तु क्रोधं समुत्पन्नं प्रज्ञया प्रतिबाधते ॥

तेजस्विनं तं विद्वांसो मन्यन्ते तत्त्वदर्शिनः ।²

“He that with wisdom suppresseth the anger that hath risen within him, him the learned knowers of truth declare to be the true Tejas-vin.

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, S’ānti-parvan, lxxxiv, 2, 3, 4.

² *Ibid.*, Vana-parvan, xxix, 17, 18.

CHAPTER X

VIRTUES AND VICES IN RELATION TO INFERIORS

AS we go more and more into the world, we come across many people who are much younger than ourselves, people of the next or of later generations, people also who are less educated, or who are poorer, or below us in social rank, with such people, inferior to ourselves in some special point or generally, we enter into relations, and we need to know what virtues we should cultivate, what vices we should avoid, if our relations with them are to be harmonious.

The first and most obvious of these relations is that with our youngers, and the best examples of the necessary virtues are seen in the relations of parents to their children. *Tenderness, Compassion, Gentleness, Kindness*, how strongly these virtues shine out in loving parents, and how happy they make the home. Fathers and mothers love their children, suffer in their sufferings, are glad in their pleasures, feel sympathy with them in everything.

This fact is beautifully brought out in an ancient story, the story of the sorrow of Surabhi, when her children suffer. In days of yore, Surabhi, the celestial mother of the race of cows and bulls, once stood before the King of the Deva-s, shedding tears. Indra asked her eagerly: "Why dost thou weep, auspicious mother of the cows? Hath any ill befallen thee?" Surabhi replied: "No evil hath befallen this body of mine; but I am grieving for my offspring. See, O King of the worlds, that cruel husbandman beating my feeble son that labours at the plough, and falls again and again in his weakness. The stronger of the pair beareth his burthen easily; but the weaker beareth it with difficulty. It is for him I grieve with heavy heart and tearful eyes." Indra asked in wonder: "But thousands of thy offspring are thus treated every day!" And Surabhi replied: "And for each of those thousands that suffers thus, I weep, O King, and I weep more for the one that is weaker than for the others." Then Indra understood the love there is in the mother's heart for her child in suffering, and poured down showers on the fields of earth, and sent comfort to man and beast alike.¹

Very tenderly is shown the love of Dasa-ratha for Rāma-candra, his perfect son, both in his joy over his splendid qualities and his sorrow in his exile.

¹ *Rāmāyaṇa*, Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa, lxiv.

Listen to his words as he addresses his princes and his nobles, when he proposes to instal his son as his successor, to seat him on the throne. Every sentence breathes his love and pride. And when Kaikeyī has claimed her boons, and demands Rāma's exile to the forest, see Dasa-ratha falling at her feet, declaring that though the world might live without the sun, without Rāma he could not live: "I lay my head at thy feet. Be merciful to me. Have pity on me, aged and on the verge of death."¹ And so true was this, that when S'rī Rāma at last tore himself away from his father, that father went home broken-hearted, and died from grief for his exiled son.¹ And remember the pitiful scene between Rāma-candra and his mother Kausalyā when he carries her the news of his exile. He shall not go, she cries in her anguish; without him she will pine away and die. Or, if he be fixed in will to go, in loving obedience to his father's orders, then will she also tread the forest paths. "Like unto a cow following its young one, shall I follow thee, O my darling, wheresoever thou shalt go."¹

And see the woe of Kuntī, when her five noble sons, the Pāṇḍava-s, are driven away into exile after the shameful gambling match in which all was lost. Kuntī—bravest of women and of mothers, who, when the hour of battle came, bade S'rī Kṛṣṇa tell

¹ *Ramāyaṇa*, Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa, xx-xxv.

her sons that the time had come for them for which a Kṣātriya woman bore a son, and that even life should be laid down for honour's sake—this Kuntī wailed, broken-hearted, and could scarce force herself away from her sons, could scarce forbear to follow them as they went forth.¹

Or again, note the agony of Arjuna over the death of his heroic son, Abhimanyu; as he returns to the camp from the field of battle, he feels unaccustomed cloud enwrap him and turns to S'rī Kṛṣṇa for help, for explanation. Eagerly he questions his brothers, who fear to answer him, and with sad heart feels the piercing anguish of his son's death; and surely the youth must have thought, as his foes closed in around him, "My father will rescue me from this fierce storm," but his father came not to his helping, and he fell, pierced by a hundred wounds. Not to have been present to protect his child—that was the thought that stung Arjuna to madness, for ever the heroic soul longs to protect the weaker; much more then when the hero is a father, and the weaker is a well-loved son.²

This duty of *Protecting the Weak* is incarnated in the righteous King, and it is the fulfilment of this duty which awakens the loyalty of his subjects.

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sabhā-parvan, lxxix.

² *Ibid.*, Droṇa-parvan, lxxii.

"To protect his subjects is the cream of kingly duties,"¹ says Bhīṣma. "The King should always bear himself towards his subject as a mother towards the child of her womb . . . as the mother, disregarding those objects that are most cherished by her, seeks the good of her child alone, even so, without doubt, should Kings conduct themselves."² So stringent is this duty of protection, that King Sagara exiled his own eldest son, Asamañja, because that prince, in reckless cruelty, drowned the children of his subjects in the river.³

Many are the stories of the ways in which good Kings defended the weak who trusted in their protection, and this sense of duty embraced the lower animals as well as man. A dog had followed King Yudhi-ṣṭhira the just from Hastinā-pura, through all his weary wanderings on the last great journey, and had crossed with him the vast desert, the only survivor of that long travel save the King himself. Indra has come down from heaven to fetch the King to Svarga, and bids him mount the car and speed upwards with him. The King stoops, and gently touches the head of his faithful canine follower: "This dog, O Lord of the Past and of the Present, is very devoted to me. He too should go.

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, lviii.

² *Ibid.*, lvi.

³ *Ibid.*, lvii.

My heart is full of compassion for this poor child of earth." "No dog may tread the heavenly fields," said Indra in reply. "Immortality and a state like unto my own, O King, far-stretching fortune, high success and all the joys of heaven—these thou hast won to-day. Cast off then the dog, who hinders thine ascent. Naught cruel is there in the act; earth-bound, he dwells on earth." "O thou of a thousand eyes, O thou of righteous living, an Āryan may not commit an act unworthy of an Āryan. I care not for a bliss bought by the casting off of one who is to me devoted." "Heaven has no place for persons followed by dogs," said Indra sternly. "Abandon the dog, and come. Time passes swiftly." "To abandon the devoted is a sin, sin immeasurable, say the wise. As black as the slaying of a Brāhmaṇa is this sin of abandoning the week. O Indra, mighty one, not for the sake of winning happiness will I cast away this dog." In vain does Indra command or plead; the King remains unmoved. Nor can sophistry confuse his clear vision: he had abandoned his brothers and his wife, why not his dog? says Indra. "This is well known in all the worlds that with the dead is neither friendship nor yet quarrel. When my brothers and Kṛṣṇā fell and died, no power was mine to bring them back to life; hence I abandoned them. I did not abandon them so long as they were living. This one

lives. To terrorise the seeker for protection, to slay a woman, to steal what belongeth to a Brāhmaṇa, to injure a friend, to each of these crimes, methinks, is equal the sin of abandoning one so devoted." And then the dog vanished and Dharma, Deva of righteousness, stood in celestial glory where had crouched the dog, and with him and Indra, hymned by Deva-s, praised by Sages, the righteous King was carried to the heavenly world.¹

Hear yet another tale of ancient days :

King S'ibi, son of Uśīnara, sat in his spacious hall, in the midst of his assembled court. All at once, a dove flew in, and, rushing through the air, flung itself into the broad lap of the King, panting breathless, fainting with fatigue and fear. As the King stroked and smoothed its ruffled feathers in a wondering tenderness, soothing back its breath and life with his caresses, an angry hawk dashed into the hall also, and came to a sudden pause before the King. In reviving terror, the dove cried out in a human voice : "Thou art the sovereign of this land wherein I dwell. I have a right to thy protection too. I come to thee for refuge from my enemy." But the hawk said also with the human voice : "I too reside within thy sovereignty, O King, and this is my appointed food by Providence itself. If thou deniest it to me, then surely thou refuseth me my

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Mahā-prasthānika-parvan, iii.

right." The King pondered a while and said : " Ye both are right ! Thou hast a right, O dove, that I protect thy innocent life from harm ; and thou, O hawk, that I deprive thee not of thy just food ! But thus shall I resolve this knot of dharma. Take thou other food from me, O hawk, till thou art full ! " But the hawk said : " I must have the dove itself, none other ; or if other, then flesh from thine own body, O King, of the weight of this very dove." The angry ministers would have slain at once the hawk that menaced thus the priceless life of their beloved master, and cried out against the petty thing. But King S'ibi said : " I sit here as the sovereign, not for small or great, not for dove or hawk, but as living embodiment of Dharma, as example to my people. If I fail in the small, I shall fail in the great also ; and my people shall fail grievously, imitating me. Bring up a pair of scales ! " Stricken with a great sorrow, powerless to disobey, setting their teeth against the outwelling groans, the ministers brought up scales. With one gentle hand, the King placed the dove into one, and with the other strong hand he hewed a piece of flesh from his own limbs. But the dove was too heavy. And the King hewed off another piece and the dove was much too heavy still. And the wondering King hewed off still another piece of flesh from his body. But the dove grew ever heavier.

At the last, the King threw his whole body into the scale. And behold, the hawk and the dove disappeared, and in their place stood Indra and Agni, and they cried aloud: "Truly art thou a King, and knowest well the sovereign's first duty of protection! We have found thee more than we had heard. Thy body is no longer mangled. Live thou long within the hearts of thy people."¹

It is true that these stories are told of kings, because they are regarded as the type of the Protector of the weak; but boys can also show protection, in a smaller measure, to all who are weaker than themselves. For these stories are told in order that we may take example by them and copy in our own lives the virtues they describe.

The great type of *Compassion*—so that his compassion has passed into a proverb, "compassionate as Ranti-deva"—was again a King. Once he and his dependants went fasting for eight and forty days, and on the morning of the forty-ninth day he received some ghī, milk, barley, and water. To this frugal meal they sat down, when a Brāhmaṇa came as guest, and he fed him ere touching the food. Then when the Brāhmaṇa had departed, he divided what remained into equal shares, and gave to each,

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, cxxxiii; and Anusāsana-parvan, xxxii. The story is told of different heroic kings.

reserving one portion for himself. But as he prepared to eat, a S'ūdra came, and he gave him gladly a share of that small meal. And when the S'ūdra had gone, ere yet he could break his fast, a man came with a troop of dogs, and the rest of the food, save one drink of water, Ranti-deva gave to these. These also went, and Ranti-deva raised to his parched lips the welcome drink. "Give water, a little water," moaned a voice near by; and Ranti-deva, turning, saw a miserable form, an outcaste, lying on the ground, turning longing piteous eyes at the water in his hand. Bending over him, with sweet compassion beaming from his tender eyes, Ranti-deva gently raised the outcaste's head, and put the cool pure water to his panting dust-soiled lips. "Drink, brother!" he said kindly doubling the value of the gift with his mild graciousness. And as the outcaste drank, the loving heart of Ranti-deva burst into prayer to Hari: "I do not ask for the eight Siddhi-s," thus he spake; "I do not ask Nirvāṇa. Only I ask that I may pervade all beings, suffering for them their miseries, that they may live without sorrow. By giving this water to save the life of this suffering man, my hunger, thirst, languor, distress and giddiness have all passed away." And this prayer has ever remained the most perfect expression of compassion.¹

¹ *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX,

The danger which is connected with the shewing out of tenderness and protection to the weaker than ourselves is the vice of *Pride*. It arises from ahaṁ-kāra, that gives the sense of separateness of "I" and "you," and thinks more of the fact that "I am helping this weaker one," than of sharing what is really a common store with one temporarily shut out from it by his separate form. By letting the mind dwell on one's own usefulness and power to do good, pride is awakened, and quickly ruins the good work that has been performed. None that wears a separate body may escape the power of this subtlest and most dangerous of foes, that is known as ahaṁ-kāra. Even the very highest fall beneath its sway in unguarded moments and unavoidably suffer the consequences, for the Law of Karma is inflexible, and equal for high and low alike. Many a warning is therefore given in the Smṛti against ahaṁ-kāra and pride, the great and subtle foe of the wise and strong. Listen to some of these.

The ancient sage Nārāyaṇa spent ages in the severest penance, on the peak known by the name of Badarī of the Himālaya mountains. To test his freedom from the attractions of sense objects, Indra sent thousands of heavenly nymphs to play about in his Tapo-vana, his grove of austerity, and divert his attention away from his austerities. They did

as directed. The Ṛṣi Nārāyaṇa saw with his illumined eye the purpose of their coming and smiled with confidence. By his Yoga power he produced as many thousands of similarly shaped forms, and sent them forth to offer hospitality to Indra's hosts. The latter were ashamed, and prayed to the Ṛṣi to forgive their evil purpose. He was pleased and did so, and further offered them a boon. And the boon they asked was that he should be their husband and protector. Great was his perplexity, but having said that he would give, he could not say no. He repented sadly: "This great trouble has arisen out of my ahaṃ-kāra, without a doubt. The first cause of the frustration of all dharma is ahaṃ-kāra." Then he said to the maidens: "It is against my vow to enter into the household life in this birth. In another birth, as Kṛṣṇa, which I shall have to take for other work also, I shall redeem my promise, and bear the fearful weight of this huge household, marrying ye all out of the high families into which you also shall be born."¹

Viśvā-mitra, son of Gādhi, belonging to a line of Kṣātriya Kings founded by Kusa, who came direct from Brahmā, returning to his kingdom with his armies after a great tour of conquest, passed through the Tapo-vana of the Sage Vasiṣṭha. Leaving his armies at a distance, Viśvā-mitra went in

¹ *Devī-bhāgavata*, IV, vi, vii.

reverence to the hermitage of the Sage to make obeisance. Vasiṣṭha received him with all honour and kindness. As Viśvā-mitra rose to depart, fearing lest his armies cause disturbance in that place of peace, Vasiṣṭha offered hospitality to the King with all his forces. Viśvā-mitra declined again and again, very unwilling to burden the ascetic's scant resources; but Vasiṣṭha insisted again and again, intimating that by the powers of his tapas and with the help of his wonderful cow Nandinī, he could with ease provide all that his regal guest could need for all his retinue. Thus in him arose ahaṃ-kāra. Viśvā-mitra, thus over-pressed, consented, and beheld the wonders of the cow. Then greed arose in his mind, and he said: "What need has a Brāhmaṇa of such a cow: it is fit possession only for Kings," and he asked Vasiṣṭha for the cow. Vasiṣṭha then grew sad, but said: "Take the cow, if she consents to leave me." But the faithful cow would not; and when the men of Viśvā-mitra endeavoured to drag her away by force, then she appealed in piteous terms to her master not to abandon her. Then Vasiṣṭha gave way to wrath, the natural next step after subtle ahaṃ-kāra and pride, and a great war arose between the Brāhmaṇa and the Kṣātriya, which changed the whole history of the land. The cow called forth to her aid many non-āryan tribes, Śāka-s and

Pahlava-s, Yavana-s and Barbara-s, and they were destroyed by Visvā-mitra ; but finally the Brāhmaṇa power of Vasiṣṭha overwhelmed the Kṣatriya prowess of Visvā-mitra : and, in vai-rāgya, he gave up his kingdom and practised the severest tapas for ages, resolved to obtain the Brāhmaṇa power ; and this he succeeded in doing, after long, long ages of self-denial, and peace was made between him and Vasiṣṭha, and Vasiṣṭha recognised him as a Brahmarṣi.

To be King of the Deva-s is to hold a position that may easily fill the heart with pride, and from this cause Indra several times fell from his high estate. Once, surrounded by his Deva-s, he sat on the throne of the three worlds, and when Bṛhas-pati, teacher of all the Deva-s, came before him, Indra kept his seat, not rising up to receive the great preceptor. Then Bṛhas-pati turned and went his ways, abandoning the Deva-s, whom the Asura-s then assaulted with success, driving them and their King from Svarga. This led to many another trouble, and to the slaying of a Brāhmaṇa on two several occasions by Indra, so that he had to perform much penance, ere he became purified.¹

Now, while Indra was performing this long penance, the Deva-s, in order that Svarga might not suffer the evils of anarchy, elected King Nahuṣa

¹ *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, vi, vii, viii.

of the Lunar Dynasty of the earth's kings, to hold the high office of the Ruler of Heaven. None other was found fit for it. But, as Nahuṣa ruled, and ruled with greater might than Indra himself, pride grew in his heart from day to day, and thoughts of sin came into his mind behind the thoughts of pride. And he said to the Deva-s: "I bear the burdens of Indra, I must have his rights also. Let S'acī, the wife of Indra, appear before me." Then the Deva-s spoke with each other in their distress, and thought that Nahuṣa was no longer fit to rule in heaven, and felt also sure that the time for Indra's return was nigh. But who was strong enough to stand before Nahuṣa? The might that he had earned by past good deeds could be defeated only if he roused the wrath of some great Ṛṣi by some dire offence. And so they spoke with S'acī, and told Nahuṣa that S'acī would see him if he came to her home on the shoulders of the Ṛṣi-s. Nahuṣa ordered a conveyance borne by Ṛṣi-s. And the sage Agastya and others were asked, by order of the King, to lift the sedan chair. And they consented gently. But, as the procession marched, Nahuṣa, in his eagerness and overflowing pride, touched Agastya's head with his foot and angrily ordered him to go faster. Then Agastya saw that Nahuṣa's time was come, and he pronounced a curse on him, and Nahuṣa

fell from heaven into a huge serpent's body on this earth, and suffered the pains of a high soul confined to a low body for many, many ages, till released therefrom by the wise words of his descendant, Yudhi-ṣṭhira, the King that had no enemy.¹

Now Bali, son of Virocana, had dwelt long in high prosperity, for the Devī Śrī, or Lakṣmī, abode with him as recompense for his good deeds. But pride in his own righteousness, and in the happiness it brought him, entered into his heart, and he began to think highly of himself and ill of others, and wrought evil to them instead of seeking their welfare as before. Then was the Devī displeased with Bali and determined to leave him, and to go and dwell with his enemy Indra, the Deva-King in Svarga. And vainly Bali lamented his folly, when he saw the Devī, who had long blessed him, living with his rival. "And this," said Utathya to King Māṃ-dhātṛ, "is the result of malice and pride. Be thou awakened, O Māṃ-dhātṛ, so that the Devī of prosperity may not in wrath desert thee. The Śruti-s declare that Un-righteousness begot a son named Pride on the Devī of Prosperity. This Pride, O King, led many among the Sura-s and the Asura-s to ruin. Many royal sages have also suffered destruction on his account. Do thou therefore awaken, O King.

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, clxxxi.

He who succeeds in conquering him, becomes a King. He who, on the other hand, suffers himself to be conquered by him becomes a slave.”¹

Sometimes the inferior may save his superior, by his wise action, from falling into sin due to wrath and pride. Thus did a son save his father, in very ancient days. Cira-kārin was the son of Gautama, of the race of Āṅgīrasa, and as his name implies—for Cira-kāra means acting slowly—he thought long ere acted, and was very cautious and discreet. Now Gautama saw his wife commit a sin, and being very angry, he said to his son: “Slay this woman!” and went away. Then Cira-kārin thought long how he should act, being compelled on the one side by the duty of obeying his father, and on the other side by the duty of reverencing the sacred person of the mother who bore him. “Obedience to a father’s commands is the highest merit. Protection of the mother is a clear duty. How shall I, then, avoid sin? Son am I both of my father and mother. All that the son has the father gives. In his satisfaction, all the Deva-s are satisfied. His words of pleasure bring blessings to the son. But the mother? She is the giver of the body, the protector of the child. When the son loses his mother, the world for him is empty. Like her is no shelter, no refuge, no defence; none is so dear as she.”

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, cxc.

Thus mused Cira-kārin, bewildered by conflicting claims. Again he thought : " The husband has his names (Bhartṛ, Pati) as the supporter and protector of the wife. If he cease to support and protect, how shall he remain the husband ? And my mother is to me the object of my highest reverence." Now Gautama, his mind calmed by meditation, was overwhelmed with the thought of the sin he had committed in commanding his son to slay his wife, and he hastened home, weeping, blaming his own carelessness for his wife's offence, and hoping that his son had not obeyed him. " Rescue me," he cried, thinking of his son, " rescue me and thy mother, and the penances I have achieved, as also thine own self, from grave sins." So it befell that Cira-kārin, by his patience and careful consideration, did his father's real will though not his hasty order, and thus saved his father from a grievous sin, inspired by pride and wrath.¹

अहिंसयैव भूतानां कार्यं श्रेयोऽनुशासनम् ।

वाक्चैव मधुरा श्लक्ष्णा प्रयोज्या धर्ममिच्छता ॥²

" Created beings must be instructed for their welfare without giving them pain, and sweet and gentle speech must be used by a (superior) who desires (to fulfil) the sacred law."

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Sānti-parvan, cclxvi.

² *Manu-smṛti*, ii, 159.

रक्षणादार्यवृत्तानां कण्टकानां च शोधनात् ।

नरेन्द्रास्त्रिदिवं यान्ति प्रजापालनतत्पराः ॥ ¹

“By protecting those who live as Āryans, and by removing thorns, Kings, solely intent on guarding their subjects, reach heaven.”

स्वे स्वे धर्मे निविष्टानां सर्वेषामनुपूर्वशः ।

वर्णानामाश्रमाणां च राजा सृष्टो ऽभिरक्षिता ॥ ²

“The King has been created to be the protector of the castes and āsrama-s, who, all according to their rank, discharge their several duties.”

यथोद्धरति निर्दाता कक्षं धान्यं च रक्षति ।

तथा रक्षेन्नृपो राष्ट्रं हन्याच्च परिपन्थिनः ॥ ³

“As the weeder plucks up the weeds and preserves the corn, so let the King protect his kingdom and destroy his foes.”

सुवासिनीः कुमारीश्च रोगिणो गर्भिणीः स्त्रियः ।

अतिथिभ्यो ऽग्र एवैतान्भोजयेदविचारयन् ॥ ⁴

“Let him, without making distinctions, feed newly-married women, young maidens, the sick, and pregnant women, even before his guests.”

¹ *Manu-smṛti*, ix, 253.

² *Ibid.*, vii, 35.

³ *Ibid.*, 110.

⁴ *Ibid.*, iii, 114.

चक्रिणो दशमीस्थस्य रोगिणो भारिणः स्त्रियाः ।

स्नातकस्य च राज्ञश्च पन्था देयो वरस्य च ॥¹

“Way should be made for a man in a carriage, for one who is above ninety years old, for a sick person, for one who carries a burden, for a woman, a Snātaka, a King, and a bridegroom.”

अनुक्रोशो हि साधूनामापद्धर्मस्य लक्षणम् ।

अनुक्रोशश्च साधूनां सदा प्रीतिं प्रयच्छति ॥²

“Compassion is the mark of the great merit of saints; compassion ever secures the blessings (or love) of the good.”

न कामये ऽहं गतिमीश्वरात्परामर्शद्वियुक्तामपुनर्भवं वा ।

आर्तिं प्रपद्ये ऽखिलदेहभाजामन्तः स्थितो येन भवन्त्यदुःखाः ॥

क्षुत्तृद् श्रमो गात्रपरिश्रमश्च दैन्यं क्लमः शोकविषादमोहाः ।

सर्वे निवृत्ताः कृपणस्य जन्तोर्जिजीविषोर्जीवजलार्पणान्मे ॥³

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, ii, 138.

² *Mahā-bhārata*, Anusāsana-parvan, v, 24.

³ *Viṣṇu-bhāgavata*, IX, xxi, 12, 13. [For translation, see p. 257.]

CHAPTER XI

THE RE-ACTION OF VIRTUES AND VICES ON EACH OTHER

WE have now considered many virtues and vices separately, and have seen, in many illustrations, how virtues lead to happiness and vices to misery. We have finally to see how a virtue helps to produce a virtue in another, and a vice a vice, so that we may learn how to help others to rightness of thought and action, and thus promote their happiness. By showing love to others, we awaken love in them; by showing hate, we awaken hate. We are apt to feel as others feel. A man who is angry makes those around him angry, and so quarrels arise and grow more and more bitter. An angry word brings an angry reply, and that brings a still more angry retort, and so on and on. On the other hand, gentle words bring gentle words in reply, kindness arouses kindness, and good deeds cause good deeds in others.

When this is understood, we can use right emotions to counteract wrong ones in others, instead of

letting ourselves run into wrong emotions when these are shown to us. If a man speaks angrily to us, and we feel inclined to answer angrily, we should check ourselves and answer very gently, and this gentle answer will soothe him, and make him feel less angry. This is what is meant by returning good for evil, and only by acting in this way can we restore harmony when it is disturbed, and preserve it for the happiness of all.

When Drau-padī urged King Yudhi-ṣṭhira to attack the Kuru-s, after he had been so cruelly cheated and ruined by them, the wise King pointed out to her that the returning of evil for evil could only result in the continuance of misery. "The wise man who, though persecuted, suffereth not his wrath to be aroused, joyeth in the other world, having passed his persecutor over with indifference. For this reason it has been said that a wise man, whether strong or weak, should ever forgive his persecutor, even when the latter is in straits. . . . If amongst men there were not some equal to the earth in forgiveness, there would be no peace among men, but continued strife born of wrath. If the injured were to return their injuries, if one chastised by his superior were to chastise his superior in return, the consequence would be the destruction of every creature, and sin would prevail. If the man who hath ill speeches from another returneth those speeches ; if the injured man

returneth his injuries ; if the chastised person chastises in return ; then would fathers slay sons, and sons fathers ; then would husbands slay wives, and wives husbands ; then, O Kṛṣṇā, how could birth take place in a world thus filled with anger ? For know thou that the birth of creatures is due to peace.”¹

Hear how Dasa-ratha, the King, turned away, by soft humility, the anger of his wife. Kausalyā, mother of Rāma-candra, rent by anguish for the loss of that unequalled son, exiled for long years from her fond arms, spake for the first time angry words to Dasa-ratha : “Thou hast murdered thy sinless son with thine own hands, O King. Well hast thou trodden the Ancient Path, maintained by thy ancestors with so much toil. The husband is the first refuge of woman ; the son is the second ; the kinsmen the third ; there is no fourth. Thou hast abandoned me ; Rāma is gone ; I cannot leave thee here to go to him. In every way thou hast destroyed me, and destroyed the kingdom and the people.” The King heard the harsh words, and bent lower under that greater burden of sorrow. His mind was all distraught, and he lost consciousness. Recovering, he saw Kausalyā still beside him. In that moment the memory of that past sin of his, of which this misery was the consequence,

¹ *Maha-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, xxix, 12-29.

came back to him. Burning with the double sorrow of that sin and of the loss of Rāma, trembling, folding hands, and bending head, spoke to her: "Forgive me, O Kausalyā. I fold my hands to thee. Ever wast thou tender-hearted, even unto others. Bear with thy husband, whether he be good or ill. I am so broken already by my sorrow. Speak not harsh words to me, even in thy anguish." She heard that piteous speech of the humbled King, and tears of pity rushed forth from her eyes like new rain-water from the waterfalls. Her anger vanished, yielding place to deep humility and remorse and fear of sin for those harsh words. She seized the hands of the King, and put them on her head, and in great agitation said: "Forgive, forgive me, O King, I entreat thee with my head upon thy feet. It is for me to ask thee for forgiveness, not for thee to ask of me, for so great sin would come to me. That woman is not honoured of the wise in this or in the other worlds, who compels her husband to propitiate her. I know the dharma, and I know that thou, my husband, knowest it, and therefore must perform thy promise and maintain the truth. Sorrow for my son drove me in a weak moment to say those words of wrong. Sorrow destroys all firmness; sorrow destroys all wisdom; there is no enemy like to sorrow. It swells within my heart, like rivers in

the rains, when I think of my beloved son.”¹ Thus was Kausalyā's bitterness overcome by Dasa-ratha's sweet humility and patience. If he had answered bitterly to her bitter words, the quarrel would have grown, and their common grief would have driven them from each other. But he met her pride with humility, her reproach with meekness, her anger with tenderness, and thus humility, meekness and tenderness were aroused in her.

So again does Rāma-candra awaken trust towards Bharata in Lakṣmaṇa's angry breast, by showing out that trust Himself. Rāma, gone forth from Ayodhyā, with His wife and brother, to keep His father's word unbroken, dwelling in the forests, heard the distant murmurs of a marching army, and bade Lakṣmaṇa ascend a tree and look. Lakṣmaṇa saw that it was Bharata coming into the forest with a great throng of men. Anger at the exile forced his thought at once into the way of suspicion against Bharata, and he came in haste to Rāma and asked him wrathfully to prepare for battle, as Bharata was coming to slay them and so make sure of his sovereignty. But Rāma's mind was full of love to Bharata and not anger. And tenderly He said: “Mistrust him not. I will say to him: ‘Give all this kingdom unto Lakṣmaṇa,’ and he will say but one word, ‘Yes.’” The wrath

¹ *Rāmāyaṇa*, Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa, lx-lxi.

of Lakṣmaṇa vanished, giving place to shame. And Bharata came and begged and prayed of Rāma that he should go back to Ayodhyā. But Rāma would not break His father's word in letter or spirit. And Bharata carried away the walking sandals of Rāma and placed them on the throne as symbol of the rightful Sovereign, and ruled Ayodhyā in His name and as his regent, for the fourteen years of Rāma's wanderings.¹

Over and over again in the dark days of their exile, did his wife and brothers, losing heart and patience, blame Yudhi-ṣṭhira for his loyal adherence to his compact with the Kaurava-s, and his patient endurance of wrong. Over and over again did that noble heart, pierced and tortured by the reproaches of his loved ones, win them back by gentleness to the path of truth and honour. Thus Bhīma, giving way to fierce anger, bitterly upbraided his elder brother with "the trite merit of sticking to a promise" made to gamblers who had overreached him, laid the loss of kingdom and riches at his door, reproached him with weakness, with deserting the virtues of his order, with making himself ridiculous. But Yudhi-ṣṭhira, summoning all his patience and remaining silent for a few moments, answered gently that doubtless all Bhīma's words were true: "I cannot reproach thee for

¹ *Rāmāyaṇa*, Ayodhyā-kaṇḍa, xiv.

torturing me thus, piercing me with thy arrowy words; for from my own folly alone has this calamity fallen upon you all. I should have controlled my mind, and not have allowed it to be influenced by arrogance, vanity and pride. I cannot then reproach thee, O Bhīma, for thy winged words. Yet have I given my pledge, and who may break his pledged word? Death is easier to bear than the gaining of a realm by a lie. What avail, then, to speak to me thus harshly? My heart is broken by the sight of the sufferings I have caused. But I may not break my word. Wait, O my brother, for the return of better days, as the sower waits for the harvest. For know, O Bhīma, that my promise may not be made untrue. Virtue is better than life itself or than the joys of heaven. Kingdom, sons, fame, wealth, all these do not come up to one-sixteenth part of truth." Thus patiently did the prince bear his brother's angry taunts, and ever was he ready to meet harsh blame with gentle humility, and to win by love a yielding that his proud brothers would never have given to wrath.¹

As gentle sympathy arouses love, so does thoughtless ridicule arouse hatred, and hatred in its turn, gives rise to many evils. The fame of Yudhi-ṣṭhira spread far and wide, and all men praised the splendour of his Rāja-sūya sacrifice. Now this praise,

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, xxxiii, xxxiv.

bestowed on his hated rival, filled with jealousy the heart of Dur-yodhana, and this evil emotion was rendered bitterer and more active by the careless disregard of his feelings shown by Bhīma and by others. For one day as Yudhi-ṣṭhira was sitting on his golden throne, surrounded by his brothers, by many courtiers and Kings, Dur-yodhana and his brothers entered the assembly hall ; and as he came he was deceived by the art of Maya, the Dānava, who had built Yudhi-ṣṭhira's palace with skill and craft, and taking the crystal lake as water, he drew up his garments to avoid wetting them, and later fell into water which looked like solid ground. Then Bhīma laughed out boisterously and rudely, and others followed his bad example, although Yudhi-ṣṭhira reproved their lack of courtesy. And Dur-yodhana, with black frown, went away ashamed, with rage in his heart, and returned to Hastinā-pura, vowing vengeance for the insult ; and this was one of the many causes that led at last to the gambling match and the exile, and the fierce battle of Kuru-kṣetra, and the slaughter of Dur-yodhana and of his and Yudhi-ṣṭhira's kinsmen.¹

Evil returned with evil does but give birth to new evil, thus lengthening the chain of misery. Bhṛgu had a son, Jamad-agni, who became famous for his

¹ *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, x, lxxv ; *Mahā-bhārata*, Śānti-parvan, xlvii.

great austerities and rigid life, and in his family was born Rāma, called later Rāma of the Axe. Now Rāma, though a Brāhmaṇa by birth, was at heart a Kṣatriya, and his character was, as his grandfather Bhṛgu had prophesied, "fit for the military order;" and in Jamad-agni also lurked hidden a seed of that fierce temper, which all his austerities had not availed to wholly burn away. And this caused sore trial and misery to befall this great race. For Jamad-agni, furious at heart because of a hasty doubt of his wife's chastity, bade his sons, one by one, to slay her; but none would lift hand against the mother's sacred person save Rāma, the youngest, who smote off her head with an axe. Being granted a boon by his father, he asked that his mother might be restored to life, and then went on pilgrimage to expiate the crime of matricide. But not thus could the evil wrought by Jamad-agni's anger be exhausted. While her sons were absent, Reṇukā, the wife of Jamad-agni, left alone, had to offer hospitality to Arjuna, son of Kṛta-vīrya; and he, intoxicated with a warrior's pride, not deeming her reception worthy of his greatness, carried away forcibly the calf of the cow whose milk supplied the butter for the daily sacrifice. When Rāma returned, Jamad-agni told him what had happened, and the plaintive lowing of the cow for her young one increased the anger aroused

by the recital; and so, losing self-control in passion, he rushed off and slew Arjuna, cutting off his thousand arms after fierce fight. This act aroused, in turn, fierce wrath of the kinsmen of Arjuna, and, to return evil with evil, they rushed to the hermitage of Jamad-agni, where he sat engaged in meditation, and slew him with arrows, defenceless as he was, sitting immersed in contemplation. Nor yet was the tale of slaughter completed, since forgiveness—the only thing that could cut the chain of evil—was not in the heart of Rāma of the Axe; and he, having bewailed his father and having burned his body with due rites, vowed by that funeral pyre the slaughter of the Kṣātriya caste—for thus the evil grew, ever swelling to larger and larger proportions. Then, taking up his axe, he attacked and slew the kinsmen of Arjuna, and after that warred with all Kṣātriya-s, exterminating well-nigh that warrior caste.¹

Even when we are treated with injustice and unkindness, it is best to preserve sweetness and agreeableness of behaviour, and thus win the one who so treats us, be he superior, equal or inferior, to show sweetness and agreeableness in return. Once Dur-vāsa visited Dur-yodhana, and proved to be a very difficult guest to please. In vain did Dur-yodhana and his brothers, treat him with the greatest

¹ *Maha-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, cxv-cxvii.

honour, waiting on him day and night. Some times Dur-vāsas would say : “ I am hungry, O King ; give me some food quickly.” And sometimes he would go out for a bath, and Dur-yodhana would have food prepared for his return, and on returning Dur-vāsas would say : “ I shall not eat anything to-day, as I have no appetite.” Coming suddenly, he would say : “ Feed me quickly.” And another time, rising at midnight, he would call for a meal, and when it was brought, would carp at it and refuse to touch it. Thus Dur-vasas, tormented Dur-yodhana for a while, but when he found that Dur-yodhana never showed either anger or impatience, then he became gracious to him and said : “ I have power to grant thee a boon. Choose what thou wilt. Pleased as I am with thee, thou mayest obtain from me anything that is not opposed to religion or morals.”¹

Sometimes, indeed, a man is so hard-hearted that no kindness can melt him, and then he goes on unyieldingly till, at last, he perishes. Dur-yodhana may serve as a striking illustration of this. Having robbed his cousins of their kingdom and riches and driven them into exile, Dur-yodhana resolved to feast his eyes on their poverty and hardships in the forest, advised by the wily Śakuni, who told him that he would increase his own

¹ *Maha-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, cclx.

joy by seeing the misery of his rivals; he took with him his brothers and friends and the royal ladies, that the Pāṇḍava-s might suffer shame under the contrast. His cruel plot failed, in consequence of his being attacked and captured by the King of the Gandharva-s and his hosts, whom he had insulted in his overbearing pride. Some of the fugitives ran to King Yudhi-ṣṭhira and prayed his aid; the gentle King, rebuking Bhīma for his cutting words of refusal, bade his brothers arm themselves and rescue their kinsmen, remembering that, by the seizure of Dur-yodhana and the ladies of their house, the family honour was stained. "Entreated for help in such words as, 'Oh, hasten to my aid,' who is there that is not high-souled enough to assist even his foe, beholding him seeking shelter with joined hands. The bestowal of a boon, sovereignty and the birth of a son, are sources of great joy. But, O sons of Pāṇḍu, the liberation of a foe from distress is equal to all the three put together." So spake the high-souled King, and his brothers obeyed. The battle raged for some time, and then Arjuna and the King of the Gandharva-s, who were friends, checked the struggle, and Arjuna enquired into the reason of the attack on Dur-yodhana. The celestial King explained that he knew Dur-yodhana's wicked motive in visiting the forest, and he was carrying him for punishment to Indra. Arjuna prayed his

friend to set free the captives, at last the Gandharva King promised to do so, if Yudhi-ṣṭhira so wished, after hearing the whole story: The Pāṇḍava prince listened silently to the account of the mean and cruel outrage contemplated by Dur-yodhana, and thanking and praising the Gandharva-s, he set Dur-yodhana and his companions free. When the Gandharva-s were gone, Yudhi-ṣṭhira spoke lovingly to his cousin: "O child, never again do thou so rash an act, for rashness leads never to happiness, O Bhārata. O son of the Kuru race, blessed be thou with all thy brothers. Go back to thy capital as thou wilt, and be not thou sad or cheerless." Thus kindly did the blameless King treat his envenomed foe, the earthly author of his misery; but Dur-yodhana, departing, was only the more filled with grief and anger; the very kindness became a new offence, and he sullenly returned to Hastinā-pura, only hating the more bitterly those who had returned his evil with kindly aid.¹

Fortunately such doggedness in angry feeling is comparatively rare, for as the sun softens butter so does the warmth of kindly feeling soften the angry mood.

Even when anger shown to us arouses in us a corresponding feeling of anger, we may try to check it, and may refuse to give it expression in word, or

¹ *Maha-bharata*, Vana-parvan, ccxxxv-ccl.

look, or gesture. Such repression gradually extinguishes the feeling, and at least we have succeeded in not casting fuel on the flame to increase its burning. After some practice of this kind, we shall find that the anger of another no longer causes any feeling of anger in ourselves, and we shall be able to use all our strength in sending kind feeling to meet the harsh feeling of the other.

It is now easy for us to see why bad company should be avoided; if we are with people who are thinking unkind, or unclean, or other evil thoughts, or who are doing wrong actions—impure, intemperate, gluttonous acts—their feelings will work on us, and will push us towards thinking and acting in a similar way. Any evils of such kind as may lie hidden in ourselves will start into more active life under such influences, and will become stronger and more difficult to fight against. For these reasons a boy who wishes to lead a pure and industrious life at school, preparing himself for a noble and useful manhood, should avoid bad company, as much as he possibly can. And if at any time he is forced into it, so that he cannot escape, he should keep his mind very busy with pure and high thoughts, and thus try to affect those round him, and to influence them for good, instead of allowing himself to be influenced by them for evil. In this way we may turn our knowledge to good use,

applying it to practise in our own lives, for thus only can we make our knowledge fruitful, and by noble living help to bring greater happiness to the world.

क्रुध्यन्तं न प्रतिक्रुध्येदाक्रुष्टः कुशलं वदेत् ।¹

“Let him not be angry again with the angry man ; being harshly addressed, let him speak softly.”

सेतून्तर दुस्तरान् अक्रोधेन क्रोधं सत्येनानृतम् ॥²

“Cross beyond the passes difficult to cross ; beyond wrath by forgiveness ; beyond untruth by truth.”

आत्मानं च परांश्चैव त्रायते महतो भयात् ।

क्रुध्यन्तमप्रतिक्रुध्यन्द्रयोरेष चिकित्सकः ॥³

“He who is not angry with the angry, he is a physician unto both. He saveth himself as well as the others from great danger.”

क्षमा ब्रह्म क्षमा सत्यं क्षमा भूतं च भावि च ।

क्षमा तपः क्षमा शौचं क्षमयेदं धृतं जगत् ॥⁴

“Forgiveness is truth, forgiveness is (source and support of) the past and the future. Forgiveness is tapas, forgiveness is purity ; this world is upheld by forgiveness.”

¹ *Manu-smṛiti*, vi, 48.

² *Sāma-veda*, Āraṇya-gāna, Arka-parvan, Prapāṭhaka ii, Khaṇḍa 7.

³ *Mahā-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, xxix, 12.

⁴ *Ibid.*, 73.

परश्चेदेनमतिवादबाणैर्भृशं विध्येच्छम एवेह कार्यः ।

सरोष्यमाणः प्रतिहृष्यते यः स आदत्ते सुकृतं वै परस्य ॥

आक्रुश्यमानो न वदामि किञ्चि-

त्क्षमाम्यहं ताड्यमानश्च नित्यम् ।

श्रेष्ठं ह्येतद्यत्क्षमामाहुः पुर्याः

सत्यं तथैवार्जवमानुशंस्यम् ॥

आक्रुश्यमानो नाक्रोशेन्मन्युरेनं तितिक्षतः ।

आक्रोष्टारं निर्दहति सुकृतं चास्य विन्दति ॥

यो नात्युक्तः प्राह रूक्षं प्रियं वा यो वा हतो न प्रतिहन्ति धैर्यात् ।

पापं च यो नेच्छति तस्य हन्तुस्तस्येह देवाः स्पृहयन्ति नित्यम् ॥

पापीयसः क्षमेतैव श्रेयसः सदृशस्य च ।

विमानितो हतोत्क्रुष्ट एवं सिद्धिं गमिष्यति ॥¹

“ If a person deeply pierces a wise man with barbed words, the wise man should take refuge in patience. The man who, provoked to anger, only smileth back gently, not yielding to anger, he taketh away from the provoker all his merits.

“ Spoken to harshly, I say nothing; even when assailed, I always forgive. This is the best—this that the elders have named forgiveness, and truth, and candour, and gentleness.

“ Addressed harshly, let him not reply harshly. The wrath of the wrathful assailant consumeth himself, and taketh away all his merit.

¹ *Mahā-bhārata*, S'ānti-parvan, cccv, 10, 12, 16-18.

“He that addressed roughly, answereth not roughly nor even mildly, he that being struck controlleth himself and returneth not the blow, nor wisheth ill unto the assailant, verily the Deva-s-
envy him.

“Abused, insulted, beaten, let him still forgive (all injuries) from the low and vile, from his superiors, from his equals ; so shall he attain perfection.”

आक्रुष्टस्ताडितः क्रुद्धः क्षमते यो बलीयसः ।

यश्च नित्यं जितक्रोधो विद्वानुत्तमपूरुषः ॥ ¹

“He indeed is the wise and good man who conquereth his wrath, and showeth forgiveness even when insulted, oppressed, and angered by a stronger.”

यदि न स्युर्मानुषेषु क्षमिणः पृथिवीसमाः ।

न स्यात्संधिर्मनुष्याणां क्रोधमूलो हि विग्रहः ॥

अभिषक्तो ह्यभिषजेदाहन्याद् गुरुणा हतः ।

एवं विनाशो भूतानामधर्मः प्रथितो भवेत् ॥

आक्रुष्टः पुरुषः सर्वं प्रत्याक्रोशेदनन्तरम् ।

प्रतिहन्याद्वतश्चैव तथा हिंस्याच्च हिंसितः ॥

हन्युर्हि पितरः पुत्रान्पुत्राश्चापि तथा पितॄन् ।

हन्युश्च पतयो भार्याः पतीन्भार्यास्तथैव च ॥

एवं संकुपिते लोके जन्म कृष्णे न विद्यते ॥ ²

[See pp. 269, 270]

¹ *Maha-bhārata*, Vana-parvan, xxix, 33.

² *Ibid.*, 25-29.

सर्वस्तरतु दुर्गाणि सर्वो भद्राणि पश्यतु ।
सर्वः सुखमवाप्नोतु सर्वः सर्वत्र नन्दतु ॥

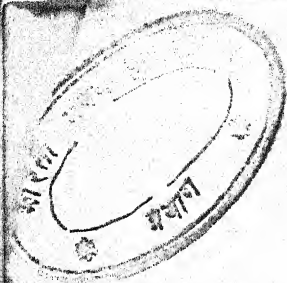
ॐ सत्यं वद धर्मं चर
सत्यमेव जयते नानृतम् ॐ

“ May all cross beyond the places hard to cross ;
may all behold good things ; may all attain to happiness ; may all rejoice everywhere.”

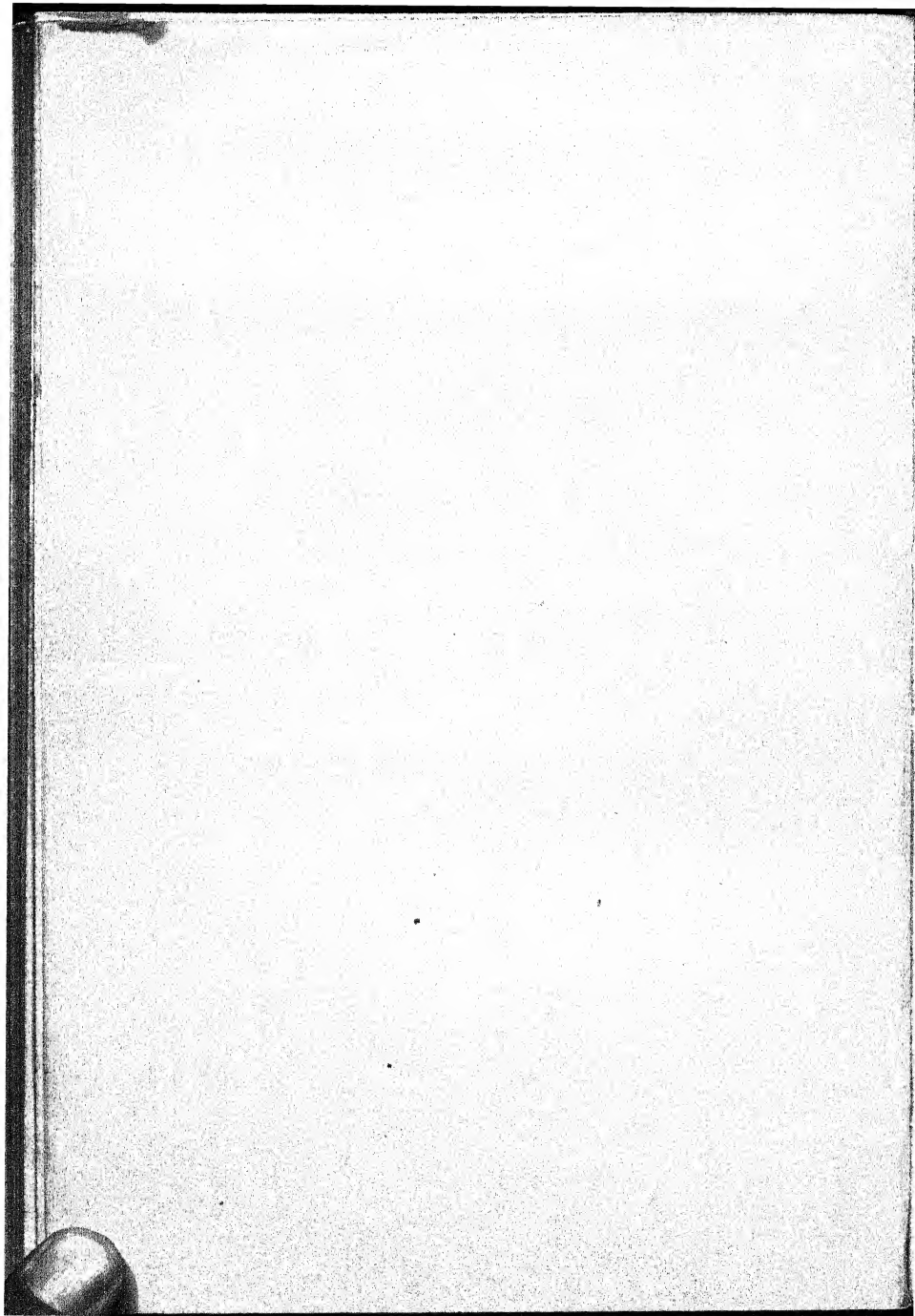
“ Aum ! Tell the Truth. Act the Right.”

“ Truth alone prevaleth, not Untruth. Aum ! ”

PEACE TO ALL BEINGS



INDEX



INDEX

A

- ABHIMANYU, death of, 251
 Action, three forces behind, 182, three stages of, 57
 Agastya, 262
 Age, respect for, 208 ff.
 Aged, reverence to the, 208, treasures of the, 208
 Agni (the Element Fire), 34, Deva, 36
 Ahaṃ-kāra (Egoism), the principle of separation, 34, 258
 Air, pure, 98
 Ākāśa (Ether), 34
 Alcohol, 98
 Alcoholic emanations, 100
 ALL, the, not an object of worship, 109
 Ancestors, debt due to, 104, 105
 Anger, to be checked, 280, 281
 Animals, creation of, 36
 Anna-maya-kośa (Food sheath), 78, destruction of, 92
 Anna-prāśana (the first feeding with solid food), the 6th
 Saṃskāra, 89
 Ap (Water), 34
 Arjuna, 124, agony of, 251, death of, 183, grief of, at
 Droṇa's death, 206, hasty vow of, 183, quarrels with
 Yudhi-ṣṭhira, 183
 Arjuna, son of Kṛta-vīrya, 276
 Āryan, an act unworthy of an, 253, race, the eldest-born
 family of the, 115
 Āryāvarta, 15
 Asrama-s (lit. resting places), 115, 155, the four, 114 ff.
 must not be mixed up, 116, names of the four, 116

- A-s'uci, 101
- Asura-s, 36
- Ātharva-veda, 17
- Ātman, 26
- Atoms, 97
- Attraction and repulsion, 175
- Avatāra-s (special manifestations of Viṣṇu), the ten, 38 ff.

B

- BAD company, 100, 281
- Bali, 168, 169, 263, the next Indra, 169
- Bathing, 99
- Bhāṅg, 98
- Bharata, 202, carries away the sandals of Rāma, 273
- Bhima, 187, disregards Dur-yodhana's feelings, 274, 275, thoughtlessness of, 188
- Bhiṣma, 164, and Ambā, 206 ff, and his father, 204, 205, and Satya-vati, 166, and Yudhi-ṣṭhira, 154, asks Śrī Kṛṣṇa's permission to depart, 198, disobeys his Guru, 206 ff, dying, 198, on the duties of Kings, 252, on gentleness, 240, on harmlessness, 187, reverences Śrī Kṛṣṇa, 198, the vow of, 204
- Bhūr-loka (the physical world), 78
- Bhūtādi (Elements), creation of, 34
- Bhuvar-loka (the world of becoming), 78
- Bliss, 175 ff, real, is in giving, 197, union is, 176
- Bodies, (or Kos'a-s), Jīvātman tries to master the, 187, (see also Kos'a-s).
- Body, a creature of habit, 184
- Brahmā (the Creator), 33, day of, 77, 78, finishes his task of the universe, 37
- Brahma-carya (complete celibacy), 90
- Brahman, 24, is bliss, 176, Nir-guṇa, 25, Sa-guṇa, 25, Sa-guṇa, an object of worship, 109
- Brāhmaṇa, and caste confusion, 127, story of the poor, 232, virtues of the, 127
- Brāhmaṇa (a portion of the Veda-s), 17
- Brahmāṇḍa (the egg of Brahmā), 33

- Brhas-pati, 187, 261
 Buddha, 9th Avatāra, 40
 Burning the dead body contrasted with burying, 92, 93

C

- CASTE-CONFUSION, reasons for, 127
 Castes, the four, 124 ff
 Celibacy, of mind and body, 117, (see also Brahmacharya)
 Ceremonies, 87 ff, gestures used in, 87, objects used in, 87, postures used in, 87, sounds used in, 88, use of, 87 (see also Saṃskāra-s)
 Children, and parents, 248 ff
 Chivalry, true, 189
 Cira-kārin, 264 ff
 Compassion, 248, 256, the most perfect expression of, 256
 Conduct, foundation of right, 149, right, 153, science of, 143
 Control, of body, 183, of body includes harmlessness, 187, of mind, 182, the triple, 189
 Creation, of Elements, 34, of Indriya-s, 34, a sacrifice, 67
 Cūḍā-karaṇa, 7th Saṃskāra, 891

D

- DADHĪCI, 69, 70
 Daivi-prakṛti, 27
 Damayanti, and Nala, 224 ff
 Daśa-ratha, and Kaikeyi, 168, and Kausalyā, 270-71, humility and patience of, 272, love of, for Rāma, 249-50
 Death, King of, weaker than wife's love, 224, spiritual, 67, what happens at, 80 ff
 Debt, payment of, 163, to the Deva-s, 163, Pitṛ-s, 163, to the Ṛsi-s, 163
 Debts, the three, 163

- Desire, 57 ff, control, 61, the rope to bind the Jivātman, 50, selfish, 182
- Deva-s, creation of the hosts of, 35, creation of these connected with the senses, 35, different from the Supreme Īśvara, 35, distributing karma, 36, the Five Rulers of the, 36, King of the, 261, ministers of Īśvara, 35
- Devi-s, who abide with Lakṣmī, 240
- Devotion, 197
- Dharma, Sānātana, 15 ff
- Dhruva, 199
- Dirty person, a public danger, 100
- Disintegration, 98
- Disobedience, to the Guru, a valid reason for, 206
- Divine, and Āsuric properties, 160, properties, list of, 160-61
- Drau-padi and Yudhi-ṣṭhira, 269-70
- Dur-vāsa and Dur-yodhana, 277-78
- Dur-yodhana, 200, 278 ff, disobeys his parents, 205
- Dvi-ja (twice-born), 89

E

- EMOTIONS, 175 ff, culture of, 175-76, develop into virtues, 175, enslave the mind, 182
- Equals, relations with, 217 ff
- Equilibrium, 114
- Ethics, 143, 181, foundation of, 148, standard of, 160 ff, (see also Morality)
- Evil, returned for evil, 275 ff
- Evolution, 37, 47, higher, of people, 153, road of, 153
- Existence, the One, 24 ff

F

- FLESH, 98
- Foe, the subtlest, 258
- Food, rules of, 97, stale, 98
- Forgive, readiness to, 239

Forgiveness, could cut the chain of evil, 277
 Form, evolution of, 48, 49, not worshipped, 110
 Fowler, the, and Kaus'ika, 203, 204, of Mithilā, 229, the
 wicked and the pigeons, 234 ff
 Fruits, 98

G

GĀM-DHĀRĪ, 205
 Garlic, 100
 Garments, must be washed, 99
 Gāyat-tri, 89
 Gentleness, 248
 Good, for evil, 269
 Grains, 98
 Gṛha-stha (householder), 90
 Guest, a, is as a Deva, 239
 Guṇa-s (the Qualities), 28, domination of the, 35

H

HARD-HEARTED, man at last perishes, 278
 Harmlessness, 187
 Harmony, 160
 Hate, 197
 Heroes, favourite phrase of, 165, of ancient India, 202
 Hindu nation, the characteristic of the, 114
 Homa, 104
 Home, 118
 Hospitality, 232, a sacrifice, 105
 Householder, duties of a, 241, qualities of a good, 118
 Household-stage, the, 118, is the most important, 118
 Human life, stages of, 115
 Husband and wife, are one not two, 217

I

IMPURITY, pouring into the Kos'a-s, 101
 Individual, is not isolated, 105

- Indra, and Vṛtra, 69, and the youths, 119, connected with the ether, 36, fall of, 261
 Indra-loka, 78
 Indriya (organ of sense), the eleventh, 35, the sixth, 35
 Indriya-s, ten centres of the senses and of action, 34, "two sets of five," 182
 Inferior, people, 248
 Inner Ruler, the, 114
 Integration, the higher, 98
 Iṣṭa-deva, the, 110
 Iśvara, 25, conscious relations with, 108, co-worker with, 82, the King, 35, rivals of, 199, third aspect of, 37, those who show hate towards, 200, the three Aspects of, 33, the Universal Parent, 72, the Will of, 153, worshipped under many forms, 109
 Itihāsa (History), 20

J

- JĀJALI, 62 ff
 Jamad-agni, son of Bhṛgu, 275 ff
 Janaka, 61 ff
 Jarā-saṃdha, 199
 Jayad-ratha, 183
 Jīva (the Soul), 26, in the animal kingdom, 48, in the mineral kingdom, 47, in the vegetable kingdom, 48, is Brahman, 46, the triple, 37
 Jīvātman (the separated Self), 26, the Bliss aspect of his nature, 175, directs the emotions, 175, the joy of, 175, 176, must free the mind, 182, related to all, 181, unfolding, 107, the young, 181
 Jñānendriya-s (organs of knowledge) the centres of the, 80
 Journey, the great, of the Pāṇḍava-s, 183

K

- KALKI, 10th Avatāra, 41
 Karma, 56 ff, in one sentence, 59, man not hopelessly bound by, 59, the twisted cord of, 57

- Karmendriya-s (organs of action), the true, 80
 Karṇa, and Indra, 166, 167
 Kaurava-s, not all to blame, 189
 Kausalyā, 250
 Kaus'ika, and the Brāhmaṇa's wife, 227 ff
 Kindness, 248, to lower creatures is a sacrifice, 105
 King, devotion to duty imposed on the, 200, the right-
 eous, 251
 Kings, the Great, 50
 Kingship, the high ideal of, 200
 Kośa-s (Sheaths), 26, comparative table of the, 80, of
 the Jīva in the three worlds, 78
 Kṛṣṇa, 8th Avatāra, 40, (see also Śrī Kṛṣṇa)
 Kṣātriya-s, the virtues of the, 126
 Kubera, connected with the Earth, 36
 Kuntī, 250, 251
 Kūrma (the Tortoise), 2nd Avatāra, 39

L

- LAKSMAṆA, 229
 Lakṣmī, Devī, 240
 Life, the Law of, 68, view of, in the Veda-s, 114
 Liquids, 98
 Loka-s (the Worlds), the four other great, 77, subdivisions
 of the three, 78, the three, 77 ff
 Longings, of a truly religious man, 108
 Love, brotherly, 229 ff, conjugal, 217 ff, of country, 201,
 of God, 197 ff, stronger than Hell, 231, unselfish,
 197, of Loyalty, 200, the object of true, 201, of
 subjects awakens Loyalty, 251

M

- MAGNETIC currents, affect the Prāṇa-maya-kośa, 100
 Mahā-bhārata, 20, 230
 Mahad-buddhi (Pure Reason), 34
 Mahā-deva, pouring out his life, 37
 Mahar-loka, 80

- Māṃ-dhātṛ, King, 201
 Man, his relations to those around, 105, in relation to others round him, 70, the truly religious, 108, a vicious, 164, a virtuous, 163
 Manas (the Mind), creation of, 35
 Mānava-dharma-s'āstra, *see* Manu-smṛti
 Mañki, 184, song of, 184
 Mano-maya-kos'a (Mind-sheath), 79
 Mantra, 17, defined, 88, effects of, 88, silent repetition of, 89, why cannot be translated, 88
 Manu, 19, 182
 Manu-s, other, 19
 Manu-smṛti, 19
 Manv-antara, 19
 Marriage, thrust into student life, 90
 Material, wealth and pleasures, 184
 Matsya (the Fish), 1st Avatāra, 38-9
 Matter (*see* Prakṛti), 25, dead, does not exist, 96-7
 Māyā, 27, Lord of, 28
 Meditation, 111
 Men, creation of, 36, noblest of, 118
 Milk, 98
 Mimāṃsā-s, systems of philosophy, 23
 Mind, made master of Indriya-s, 182, must be conquered, 182, swayed by desires, 182
 Minerals, creation of, 36
 Mongoose, half-golden, 232 ff
 Morality, is relative, 154, is subtle, 154, object of, 144
 Mukta (free Jiva), 50
 Mūla-prakṛti, 25

N

- NAHUṢA, 261, son of, *see* Yayāti
 Nala, *see* Damayanti
 Nalopākhyāna, 226
 Nandini, the cow, 260
 Nārada, 108, 198, and Sāvitri, 220, loved everywhere, 240

- Nara-siṃha (the Man-lion), 4th Avatāra, 39, 199
 Nārāyaṇa, the Sage, 258 ff
 National greatness, 201
 Nations, characteristics of, 114
 Nature, Divine, 164, external is a reflection of Brahman,
 164, Laws of, 96, Laws of, are expressions of Truth,
 164
 Nivṛtti-mārga (Path of Return), 153
 Not-Self, diversity of the, 164, parts of the, 181
 Nyāyā, system of philosophy, 22

O

- OBEDIENCE, to Parents, 202
 Onion, 100
 Opposites, the great pair of, 27
 Order, imposed by Īśvara, 115

P

- PADMA, a Nāga, 240
 Pāṇḍava-s, brotherly love of the, 230 ff, not all to praise,
 189, revere Bhiṣma and Droṇa, 206
 Parāśara-smṛti, 19
 Paraśu-rāma (Rāma of the axe), 6th Avatāra, 40, Guru
 of Bhiṣma, 207 ff, (*see also* Rāma of the axe)
 Paths, the two, 153
 Patriotism, akin to loyalty, 201
 Peace, the birth of creation due to, 270, source of, 184
 Perseverence, 184
 Pilgrimage of the Jīva, 47 ff, recurring stages in, 82
 Pitṛ, 82
 Pitṛ-loka, 78, 81
 Plants, creation of, 36
 Pole-star, 199
 Prahlāda, 198, 199, and Indra, 166
 Prakṛti, 25
 Prāṇa, (life-energy), 79
 Prāṇa-maya-kos'a, 79, dispersal of, 92, of others, 100

- Pravṛtti-mārga (path of going forth), 152
 Preta, 81
 Preta-kriyā, 92
 Preta-loka, 78, 81
 Pride, 258, son of Unrighteousness and Prosperity, 263
 Pṛthivi (the Earth), 34
 Public spirit, 201, akin to loyalty, 201
 Pūjā, 110
 Purāṇa-s, 20
 Puru, son of Yayāti, 186
 Puruṣārtha-s, The four, 132 ff
 Puruṣa-sūkta, 67
 Puruṣottama, 25

Q

QUOTATIONS :

Aṅgiras 91

Bhagavad-gītā, (ii, 13) 51

(ii, 18-22) 51

(ii, 27-28) 83

(ii, 30) 51

(ii, 47) 174

(ii, 48) 114

(ii, 64) 179

(iii, 10-15) 72-3

(iii, 11) 170

(iii, 16) 170

(iii, 34) 179

(iii, 37) 179

(iv, 7-8) 44

(iv, 11) 113

(iv, 12) 73

(iv, 14-15) 64

(iv, 19-23) 64-5

(iv, 23) 75

(iv, 31) 75

(iv, 38) 102

(v, 10-12) 53

- Bhagavad-gītā, (v, 18-21) 53-4
 (v, 24-26) 54
 (vi, 1) 123
 (vi, 26) 192
 (vi, 29) 151
 (vi, 31) 61
 (vi, 35) 192
 (vii, 4-5) 32
 (vii, 5) 27
 (vii, 19) 84
 (vii, 21) 113
 (vii, 27) 178
 (viii, 17-18) 83
 (ix, 20-21) 84
 (ix, 27-28) 75
 (ix, 30-31) 102
 (x, 20) 30, 150
 (xi, 15) 41
 (xi, 22) 41
 (xii, 3-7) 111-12
 (xiii, 6) 178
 (xiii, 10) 192
 (xiii, 12-17) 28
 (xiii, 27) 31
 (xiii, 30) 31
 (xiii, 33) 31
 (xiv, 5) 32
 (xiv, 9-13) 43-4
 (xiv, 17-18) 43
 (xv, 7) 31
 (xv, 16-18) 30
 (xvi, 1-3) 161
 (xvi, 4) 161
 (xvi, 23) 179
 (xvii, 14) 183, 191
 (xvii, 15-16) 191
 (xviii, 46-47) 157
 (xviii, 61-62) 104, 142
- Brahmāṇḍa-purāṇa, 93

- Bṛhad-āraṇyakopaniṣad,
 (I, v, 16) 82
 (II, iii, 1) 25
 (IV, iv, 4) 52
 (IV, iv, 5-6) 63
 Chāndo-gyopaniṣad, (III, xiv, 1) 24, 64
 (VI, ii, 1) 24
 (VII, xxii, 1) 177
 (VII, xxiii, 1) 177
 (VII, xxiv, 1) 177
 Garuḍa-purāṇa,
 (II, v, 36) 95
 (II, xvi, 6-7) 95
 (II, xvi, 20) 95
 Īs'opaniṣad,
 (6-7) 150
 Kāthopaniṣad,
 (iii, 3-7) 66
 (iv, i) 177
 (v, 10) 134
 (v, 12) 180
 (v, 13) 177-78
 (vi, 14) 65
 Mahā-bhārata,
 Ādi-parvan, (lxxv, 50) 192
 (lxxxvii, 8-9) 245
 (lxxxvii, 11-13) 245
 Anus'āsana-parvan,
 (v, 24) 267
 (civ) 145
 (cxiii) 187
 Mahā-prasthānika-parvan, (iii) 231
 Sabhā-parvan, (xxxviii, 8) 198
 S'ānti-parvan,
 (lvi) 252
 (lvii) 252
 (lviii, 133) 213
 (lxviii, 60, 61) 214
 (lxxxiv, 2-4) 247
 (xc) 201
 (cxxiv, 67) 159
 (clviii, 6-7) 194
 (clviii, 13-16) 194

- Sānti-parvan (clxi, 1, 3) 173
 (clxi, 4, 5, 10, 8, 9) 171
 (clxxiii-) 61
 (clxxvii-) 185
 (ccxxxi, 27) 157
 (ccxxxi, 227) 178
 (cclx, 20-21) 158
 (cclx, 23) 158
 (cclxi-) 63
 (cclxii, 9) 146
 (cclxvi-) 265
 (cccv, 10) 283
 (cccv, 12) 283
 (cccv, 16-18) 283
 (cccxi-) 62
 (cccxi-) 62
 (cccxxvi-) 62
 (cccxxvii-) 61
 (cccxxviii-) 62
 Udyoga-parvan, (i-) 231
 (ii, 17) (?) 193
 (cxxxviii, 8-29) 194
 Vana-parvan, (j, 13) (?) 172
 (xxix, 6) 246
 (xxix, 7) 246
 (xxix, 12) 282
 (xxix, 12-29) 270
 (xxix, 17, 18) 247
 (xxix, 25-29) 284
 (xxix, 33) 284
 (xxix, 37) 282
 (xxxiii, 42, 43) 147
 (xxxiii-) 274
 (xxxiv-) 274
 (cxv-) 277
 (cxvii-) 277
 (clxxx, 21) 130
 (clxxx, 25, 26) 130
 (ccxiii) 204

Vana-parvan	(ccxv-) 204
	(ccxxxv-) 280
	(ccl-) 280
	(cclx-) 278
	(ccxcvii, 42) 172
	(ccxcvii, 47, 48) 172
	(cccxiii, 108) 130
Manu-smṛti,	(i, 5-7) 29
	(i, 26) 136
	(i, 80) 134
	(i, 87-91) 128, 129
	(i, 108-110) 145
	(ii, 6) 158
	(ii, 26) 91
	(ii, 53) 101
	(ii, 57) 121
	(ii, 92) 182
	(ii, 120-121) 215
	(ii, 138) 267
	(ii, 145) 214
	(ii, 159) 265
	(ii, 160) 244
	(ii, 163) 245
	(ii, 177-180) 122
	(ii, 191) 122
	(ii, 222) 101
	(ii, 224) 138
	(ii, 225) 215
	(ii, 229) 215
	(ii, 230) 215
	(ii, 234) 215
	(iii, 2) 120
	(iii, 55-58) 242
	(iii, 70) 104, 106
	(iii, 75) 106
	(iii, 77) 118, 122
	(iii, 80-81) 106
	(iii, 82) 94
	(iii, 101) 243

Manu-smṛti

- (iii, 105) 243
- (iii, 106) 243
- (iii, 114) 267
- (iv, 138) 244
- (iv, 151) 101
- (v, 105) 102
- (v, 109) 102
- (vi, 2) 120
- (vi, 33) 120
- (vi, 35-36) 170
- (vi, 37) 121
- (vi, 43) 282
- (vi, 87), 120, 187
- (vi, 89, 90) 118, 122
- (vi, 92) 195
- (vii, 3-4) 212
- (vii, 14) 212
- (vii, 18) 212
- (vii, 26-28) 212
- (vii, 35) 266
- (vii, 110) 266
- (viii, 96) 173
- (ix, 45) 217, 242
- (ix, 101) 218
- (ix, 101-102) 243
- (ix, 253) 266
- (x, 63) 196
- (xii, 3-4) 182, 190
- (xii, 8) 190
- (xii, 10-11) 190
- (xii, 16-17) 94
- (xii, 20) 94
- (xii, 85) 162
- (xii, 88) 136
- (xii, 88-90) 156
- (xii, 118-119) 162
- (xii, 119) 42
- (xii, 124) 42
- (xii, 125) 162

- Muṇḍakopaniṣad, (I, ii, 5-6) 74
 (II, i, 1) 42
 (II, i, 3) 42
 (II, i, 7) 42
 Nṛ-siṃhottara-tāpiny-upaniṣad,
 (i, 6) 174
 (i, 7) 176
 Pāṇini-s'ikṣā, (52) 90
 Patañjali-mahā-bhāṣya
 (VI, i, 84) 90
 Rāmāyaṇa, 240, 250
 Ṛg-veda, (I, clxiv, 46) 41
 (VII, lxxxiv, 4-5) 74
 (X, xc, 12) 128
 Sāma-veda, 282
 Sarva-sāropaniṣad, 178
 Śvetāś'va-taropaniṣad,
 (vi, 1) 210
 (vi, 7-9) 210
 (vi, 12-13) 210
 (vii, 2) 150
 Vasiṣṭha-smṛti, (VI, 3-4) 131
 Veda text (quoted by Kullūka), 170
 Viṣṇu-bhāgavata, (I, iv, 5) 108
 (I, v, 12) 111
 (III, xxv, 18-19) 208
 (III, xxv, 25) 209
 (III, xxv, 26) 209
 (III, xxv, 27) 209
 (IV, xxii, 34-35) 146
 (VII, ix, 35) 129
 (IX, xxi, 12-13) 267
 Vyāsa-smṛti, 91
 Yājñīa-valkya-smṛti,
 (iii, 65) 159
 (iii, 66) 196

R

RĀJASIK, defined, 35

Rāma, [or Rāma-candra], 7th Avatāra, 40

Rāma-candra, 199, 202, and Sitā, 218, 219, awakens trust towards Bharata, 272, 273, gentle in speech, 239, memory of, for injuries, 238

Rāma, of the Axe, 277 ff, [see also Paras'u-rāma].

Rāmāyaṇa, 20, 229, of Tulsi-dās, 40, of Vālmiki, 40

Ranti-deva, King, 256 ff, prayer of, to Hari, 257

Rāvaṇa, 199, 219

Rebirth, 46

References,

Advanced Text Book of Hindu Religion and Ethics, 38

Aitareyāranyaka, 38

Bhagavad-gītā, III, 202

VIII, 3

XIV, 35 (footnote)

XVI, 161

XVII, 35 (footnote)

XVIII, 35 (footnote)

Bhāgavata-purāṇa, VI, 261

VII, 261

VIII, 261

IX, 256

X, 275

Devi-bhāgavata, IV, 259

VI, 259

VIII, 259

Mahā-bhārata,

Ādi-parvan, 166, 207

Anusāsana-parvan, 198, 256

As'va-medha-parvan, 239

Bhīṣma-parvan, 165, 206

Droṇa-parvan, 165, 183, 206, 251

Karṇa-parvan, 183

Mahā-prasthānika-parvan, 183, 231

Sabhā-parvan, 198, 251

Salya-parvan, 198

S'ānti-parvan, 61, 62, 63, 119, 155, 164, 166, 185,

198, 201, 237, 240, 241, 265, 275

Sauptika-parvan, 198

- Svargārohaṇa-parvan, 231
 Udyoga-parvan, 205
 Vana-parvan, 70, 166, 168, 198, 224, 229, 231, 234,
 256, 263, 264, 274, 277, 278, 280
 Manu-smṛti, III, 104, 118; VI, 116, 118
 Rāmāyaṇa, 219
 Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa, 168, 202, 203, 238, 240, 249, 250,
 272, 273
 Yuddha-kāṇḍa, 199
 Svetāś'va-taropaniṣad, 47
 Viṣṇu-bhāgavata, 108, 169
 Viṣṇu-purāṇa, 199
 Re-incarnation, *see* Rebirth
 Religion, first proclamation of, 148
 Religions, quarrels of the, 110
 Reṇukā, wife of Jamad-agni, 276
 Reverence, 197
 Return, of the Jīva to Earth, 81
 Rg-veda, 17
 Rich, the, are the stewards of the poor, 105
 Ridicule, arouses hate, 274
 Right and wrong, 151 ff, another definition, 153, 154,
 defined, 153, some general rules of, 156, test of, 160
 Righteousness, 187
 Ṛṣi-s, the, 50

S

- SACRIFICE, 67 ff, becomes a delight, 71, growth of the
 practice of habitual, 70, has outer form and inner
 meaning, 103, Law of, 68, 103, meaning of, 68,
 mutual 163, the primary, 67, to Bhūta-s, inner 105,
 to Bhūta-s, outer, 105, to Deva-s, inner, 104, to
 Deva-s, outer, 104, to Īś'vara every action, 72, to
 men, inner, 105, to men outer, 105, to the Pitṛ-s,
 inner, 104, to the Pitṛ-s outer, 104, to Ṛṣi-s and
 Veda-s, inner, 104, to Ṛṣi-s and Veda-s, outer, 103,
 true remnants of, 119

- Sacrifices, the daily, 71, the five daily, 103 ff, the five daily, promote union, 163, the "Great," 103
- Ṣaḍ-aṅgāni, 21
- Ṣaḍ-dars'anāni, 21
- Sagara, and Asamañja, 252
- S'akti (Divine Energy) 27
- Ṣakuni, 278
- Samāvartana (returning home), 9th Saṃskāra, 90
- Sāma-veda, 17
- Samdhyā, Vaidik and Tāntrik, 111
- Samhitā, 17
- Sāṃkhya system of philosophy, 22
- Saṃsāra (World-evolution or World-process), 37
- Saṃskāra-s, 87 ff, the seven, of childhood, 84, the ten, 89
- S'aṅkha-Likhita-smṛti, 19
- Sapīṇḍi-karaṇa, 93
- Ṣarīra (the Physical body), 26
- S'āstra-s, the, tell us of the will of Īs'vara, 155
- Sāttvik, defined, 35
- Satya-vat, 220
- S'aucam, 96 ff
- Sāvitri and Yama, 219 ff
- Science, defined, 143, ethical, meaning of, 143, (see also Ethics)
- SELF, the, 25, (see also Brahman)
- Self, unity of the, 148
- Self-control, defined, 181, first part of, 182, Manu on, 182
- Selves, many in appearance, 148, younger to be helped, 72
- Serving, humanity, 105
- S'ibi, King, 254 ff
- Sin, is poison, 144
- S'is'u-pāla, 200
- S'iva, 33
- Smṛti, 16, 18, 19 (see also Dharma-s'āstra)
- S'rāddha, 92 ff, no need of in Svar, 93
- S'ri Kṛṣṇa, and Arjuna, 165, and Jayad-ratha, 183, and the Pāṇḍava-s, 165, and Yudhi-ṣṭhira, 165, advises Arjuna, 202

- Śruti, 16
 Śūdra, duties of the, 125
 Śuka, son of Vyāsa, 62
 Śukra, Ṛṣi, 186
 Speech, control of, 183, hasty, 183
 Spirit, the, 25 (*see also* Ātman)
 Sthūla-s'arira (solid body), 79
 Strength, thoughtless exercise of, 188
 Submission, to God's will, 197
 Sūkṣma-s'arira, (subtle body), 79, 88
 Superiors, man's, 197
 Sura, 36 (*see* Deva-s also)
 Surabhi, 249 ff
 Sūrya-loka, 78
 Svarga-loka (the Heaven world), 78
 Sweetness, of behaviour, 277

T

- TĀMASIK, defined, 35
 Tantra, 18 (*see also* Upa-veda)
 Tarpaṇa, 104
 Tattva-s (the Elements), the seven, 33
 Tea, etc., 98
 Teacher, third great object of reverence, 206 ff
 Teaching, a sacrifice, 104
 Tenderness, 248
 Test, of each action, 160
 Thought, 57, 58, use of, in checking desire, 60
 Thoughtlessness, causes harm, 187
 Titan Kings, 186
 Transmigration, *see* Rebirth
 Tri-loki (the three worlds), 77 ff, 152
 Tri-mūrti, 33
 Truth, 164, the great, in ethical science, 164, the greatest,
 164, is Brahman, 169
 Truthfulness, in Hindu literature, 165, promotes
 union, 165

Tulā-dhāra, the Vais'ya, 61, 62 ff
Tyranny, 189

U

UNHAPPINESS, 176
Union, the path that leads to, 153, promoting, 160
Upādhi, 26
Upa-nayana, or second birth, the 8th Saṃskāra, 89, 116
Upaniṣad, 17
Upāsana, 110
Upa-veda, 18
Urbanity, 239 ff
Utathya, 200

V

VAIS'EṢIKA, system of Philosophy, 22
Vais'ya, virtues of the, 126
Vāmana (the Dwarf), 5th Avatāra, 39, 168
Varāha (the Boar), 3rd Avatāra, 39
Varṇa-s (colours or castes), 124, 155, compared to the
 Āsrama-s, 115
Varṇa-saṃkara (caste-confusion), 124
Varuṇa, connected with water, 36
Vasiṣṭha, and Viśvā-mitra, 259 ff
Vāsu-deva, the thousand names of, 198
Vāyu, Deva, connected with air, 36, the element Air, 34
Vedānta, system of Philosophy, 23
Veda-s, the four, 3, parts of, 17
Vice, fruit of, 190, produces vice, 268, root of, 190
Vidura, 238 ff
Vijñāna-maya-kos'a (knowledge-sheath), 79
Virtues, 163 ff, altruistic, 189, and vices defined, 163,
 and vices in relation to equals, 203 ff, and vices in
 relation to inferiors, 248 ff, and vices in relation to
 superiors, 197 ff, and vices and their reaction on
 each other, 238 ff, characteristic of each caste,
 127, 128, Egoistic (or self-regarding), 189 ff,

family, 217 ff, "forms of Truth," 164, fruit of, 190, in relations with others, classification, 189, 190, of a student, 117, produce virtues, 268, root of, 190, self-regarding, see egoistic virtues, self-regarding defined, 181

Viṣṇu, 32, work of, 37

Viśvā-mitra, son of Gādhi, 259 ff, Ṛṣi and the Caṇḍāla 154, (see also Vasiṣṭha)

Vivāha (Marriage), 10th Saṃskāra, 90

Vyāsa, 108

W

WASHING, the hands, etc., 99

Water, 98

Weak, protecting the, 252

Wife, the, who truly loves, 227

Wisdom, the treasure of the aged, 208

World, the outer, is a symbol of the inner, 99, the present position of, in evolution, 153

Worship, 108 ff, 197, attributes needed, for 109, defined, 108, forms of, 109

Wrath, next step after Ahaṃ-kāra, 260

Y

YĀJÑA-valkya, 62, Smṛti, 19

Yajur-veda, 17

Yayāti, 186 ff, sum of the life experiences of, 187

Yoga, system of Philosophy, 22

Youth, the time of conquering the body, 183, 184

Youths, story of the Brāhmaṇa, 119

Yudhi-ṣṭhira, and the dog, 252 ff, and his brothers, 200, blamed by his wife and brothers, 273 ff, forgot truthfulness, 165, in Svarga, 230, the loyal prince, 200, Rāja-sūya Sacrifice of, 198, releases Nahuṣa, 263, rescues Dur-yodhana, 279, taunting speech of, 183

CORRECTIONS

P. 36	L. 23	resistance
„ 137	„ 25	Kāma
„ 182	„ 25	back
„ 283	„ 1	विद्येच्छम